This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

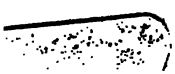
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

3 3433 06637518 3



Page

STORAGE BATTERIES SIMPLIFIED

OPERATING PRINCIPLES — CARE AND INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS

A COMPLETE, NON-TECHNICAL BUT AUTHORITATIVE TREATISE DISCUSSING THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE MODERN STORAGE BATTERY, OUTLINING THE BASIC OPERATION OF THE LEADING TYPES

ALSO THE METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION, CHARGING, MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR. ALL PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS OF COMMERCIAL BATTERIES ARE SHOWN AND DESCRIBED

BY

VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M. S. A. E.

AUTHOR OF "AUTOMOBILE STARTING, LIGHTING AND IGNITION SYSTEMS," ETC.

INCLUDES SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR CARE AND REPAIR OF AUTOMOBILE BATTERIES AND GLOSSARY OF TERMS

THIS BOOK HAS BEEN WRITTEN WITH THE CO-OPERATION OF THE LEADING AMERICAN STORAGE BATTERY MAKERS

Thoroughly Illustrated with Special Charts, Diagrams and Photographs

NEW YORK

THE NORMAN W. HENLEY PUBLISHING COMPANY

2, 4 AND 6 WEST 45th STREET

1917

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
881031
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
B 1919 L

COPYRIGHTED 1917, BY
THE NORMAN W. HENLEY PUBLISHING COMPANY

COMPOSITION, ELECTROTYPING AND PRESSWORK
THE TROW PRESS, NEW YORK, U. S. A.

INTRODUCTION

THE greatly increasing field of usefulness for the storage battery and the improvements that have been made in its construction are but little appreciated by the average electrician and mechanic. Its use as a source of power for electric automobiles is, of course, well known, but one seldom considers the enormous number of batteries of this type used on the gasoline automobiles. The storage battery is one of the most important parts of the electrical system which includes engine starting and ignition, as well as car lighting of practically every gasoline automobile now manufactured. It is evident that a practical working knowledge of the operating principles and care of the various types of storage batteries now available is desirable. The industrial uses of storage batteries are also increasing, so the student who desires to keep well posted on current engineering development will find much of interest in this treatise. The writer wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to the following storage battery makers for valuable information and permission to reproduce extracts and illustrations from their literature: Gould Storage Battery Company, Electric Storage Battery Company, Willard Storage Battery Company, U. S. Light and Heat Corporation, and Edison Storage Battery Company. Naturally such co-operation makes a more authoritative and valuable treatise than would otherwise be available. As the experience of these leading authorities on all phases of storage battery engineering is condensed and digested, all the information that the average reader needs may be obtained without consulting a mass of literature. Emphasis is placed on the fact that this work is not intended as a technical treatise but a practical discussion of storage battery operating principles, their maintenance, charging, and chief industrial applications.

THE AUTHOR.

April, 1917.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R 1919 L

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

PAGES

Discovery of Reversible Chemical Action—Chemical Producers of Electricity—Action of Simple Primary Battery—The Dry Cell—Methods of Connecting Dry Cells—Secondary Batteries—Simple Lead Plate Type—Planté, or Formed Plates—Faure, or Pasted Plates—Edison Non-acid Battery Action 13–28

CHAPTER II

How Batteries Differ in Construction—Batteries Using Other Than Lead Plates—Details of Planté Process—Advantages of the Faure Process—Lead Plate Construction—Gould Plates—Exide Plates—Exide "Iron Clad" Plate—Edison Alkaline Battery—Function of Separator 29–52

CHAPTER III

Storage Battery Defects—Sediment in Cells—Sulphation, Cause and Cure—Cadmium Readings—Making Electrolyte—Features of Edison Cells—Tools and Supplies—Taking Down Exide Battery—Taking Down Gould Sealed Cells—Disassembling Willard Battery—Lead-Burning Apparatus—Lead-Burning Process Outlined—Battery Defects and Restoration Summarized 53–90

CHAPTER IV

Battery Charging Methods—Currents and Voltages—Electrolytic Rectifiers—Vibrator Rectifiers—Mercury Arc Rectifier—Rotary Converters—Rheostats—Lamp Bank Resistance—Charging Precautions—Charging Vehicle Batteries—Winter Care of Automobile Storage Batteries 91–121

CHAPTER V

Uses of Storage Batteries—Internal Combustion Engine Ignition—Automobile Starting and Lighting Systems—Shifting Gears—Electric Pleasure and Commercial Automobiles—Isolated Lighting Plants—Train Lighting—Mine Locomotives and Street Cars—Electric Launches—Submarine Boats—Miscellaneous Marine Applications—Railway Switch and Signal Service—Stand-by and Booster Service—Drawbridge Operation—Edison Mine Lamp Battery 122–189

CHAPTER VI

Glossary of Storage Battery Terms 190–200

CHAPTER I

Chemical Producers of Electricity—Action of Simple Primary Battery—The Dry Cell—Methods of Connecting Dry Cells—Discovery of Reversible Chemical Action—Secondary Batteries—Simple Lead Plate Type—Planté, or Formed Plates—Faure, or Pasted Plates—Edison Non-acid Battery Action.

Current Production by Chemical Action.—The earliest known method of continuous current generation is by various forms of chemical current producers, which may be either primary or secondary in character. A simple form of cell is shown in section at Fig. 1, A, and as the action of all devices of this character is based on the same principles, it will be well to consider the method of producing electricity by the chemical action of a fluid upon a metal. The simple cell shown consists of a container which is filled with an electrolyte, which may be either an alkaline or acid solution. Immersed in the liquid are two plates of metal, one being of copper, the other zinc. A wire is attached to each plate by means of suitable screw terminals.

If the ends of the plates which are not immersed in the solution are joined together a chemical action will take place between the electrolyte and the zinc plate; in fact, any form of cell consists of dissimilar elements which are capable of conducting electricity immersed in a liquid, which will act on one of them more than the other. The chemical action of electrolyte on the zinc liberates gas bubbles, which are charged with electricity and which deposit themselves on the copper plate. The copper element serves merely as a collecting member, and is termed the "negative" plate, while the zinc which is acted upon by the solution is termed the "positive" member. The flow of current is from the zinc to the copper plate through the electrolyte, and it is returned from the copper plate to the zinc element by the wiring which comprises the external circuit. The terminal on the cop-

per plate is known as the "positive," that on the zinc is called the "negative."

While in the cell shown zinc and copper are used, any other combination of metals between which there exists a difference in electrical condition when one of them is acted upon by a salt or acid may be employed. Any salt or acid solution will act as an electrolyte if it will combine chemically with one of the ele-

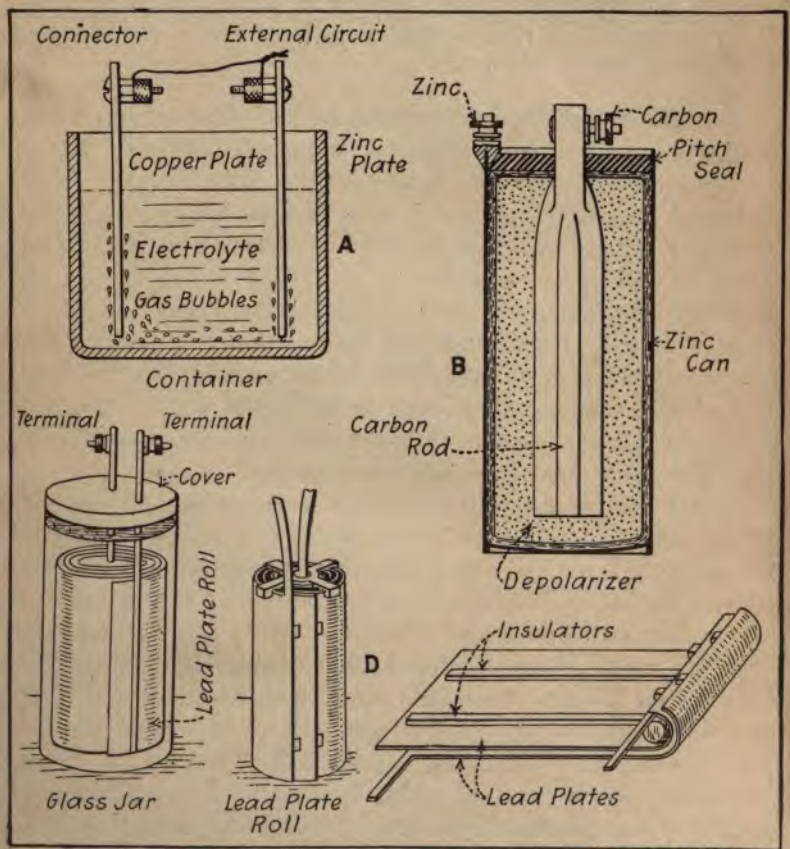


Fig. 1.—Types of Chemical Producers. A—Elementary Primary Cell. B—Construction of Dry Cell. C—Simple Form of Secondary Battery. D—The Lead Plate Roll and How It is Made.

ments and if it does not at the same time offer too great a resistance to the passage of the electric current. The current strength will vary with the nature of the elements used, and will have a higher value when the chemical action is more pronounced between the positive member and the electrolyte.

As the vibrations which obtain when the automobile is driven over highways makes it difficult to use primary cells in which there is a surplus of liquid, a form of cell has been devised in which the liquid electrolyte is replaced by a solid substance which cannot splash out of the container even if the cell is not carefully sealed. A current producer of this nature is depicted in section at Fig. 1, B. This is known as a dry cell, and consists of a zinc can, in the center of which a carbon rod is placed. The electrolyte is held close to the zinc or negative member by an absorbent lining of blotting paper, and the carbon rod is surrounded by some depolarizing material. The top of the cell is sealed with pitch to prevent loss of depolarizer.

The depolarizer is needed that the cell may continue to generate current. When the circuit of a simple cell is completed the current generation is brisker than after the cell has been producing electricity for a time. When the cell has been in action the positive element becomes covered with bubbles of hydrogen gas, which is a poor conductor of electricity and tends to decrease the current output of the cell. To prevent these bubbles from interfering with current generation some means must be provided for disposing of the gas. In dry cells the hydrogen gas that causes polarization is combined with oxygen gas evolved by the depolarizing medium, and the combination of these two gases produces water, which does not interfere with the action of the cell. Carbon is used in a dry cell instead of copper because it is a cheaper material, and the electrolyte is a mixture of sal ammoniac and chloride of zinc, which is held in intimate contact with the zinc shell, which forms the negative element by the blotting-paper lining.

When it is desired to obtain more amperage or current quantity than could be obtained from a single cell, they are joined in **series-multiple** *connection*. With this method of wiring two or

more sets of four cells which have been joined in series are used. The zinc of one set is joined with the zinc of the other, and the two carbons are similarly connected. Any number of sets may be connected in series multiple, and the amperage of the combination is increased proportionately to the number of sets joined together in this manner.

When dry cells are connected in series, the voltage of one

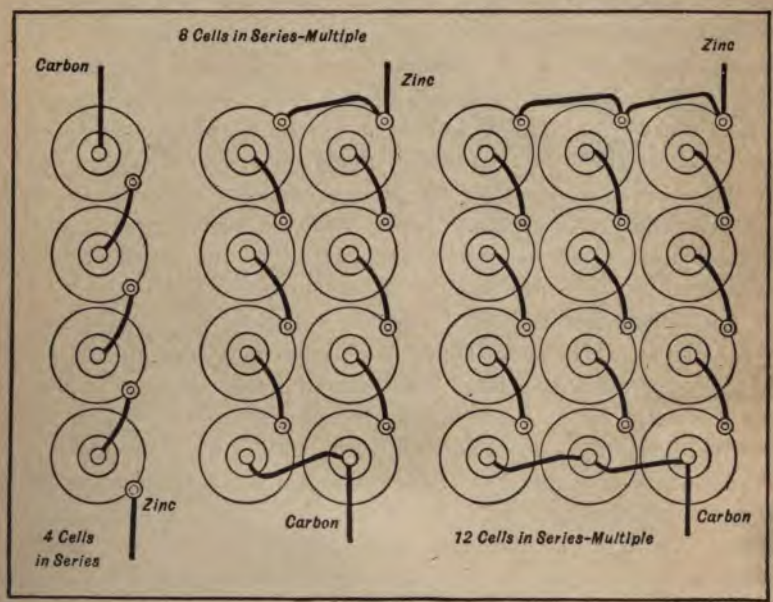


Fig. 2.—Methods of Joining Dry Cells to Form Batteries of Varying Value.

cell is multiplied by the number of cells, and the amperage obtained from the set is equal to that of one cell. When connected in series multiple, as shown at Fig. 2, the amperage is equal to two cells, and the voltage produced is equivalent to that obtained from four cells. When twelve cells are joined in series multiple, the amperage is equal to that of one cell multiplied by three, while the voltage or current pressure is equal to that produced by *one cell multiplied by the* number of cells which are in series in

any one set. By properly combining dry cells in this manner batteries of any desired current strength may be obtained.

The terms "volt" and "ampere" are merely units by which current strength is gauged. The "volt" is the unit of pressure or potential which exists between the terminals of a circuit. The "ampere" measures current quantity or flow, and is independent of the pressure. One may have a current of high amperage at low potential or one having great pressure and but little amperage or current strength. Voltage is necessary to overcome resistance, while the amperage available determines the heating value of the current. As the resistance to current flow increases, the voltage must be augmented proportionately to overcome it. A current having the strength of one ampere with a pressure of one volt is said to have a value of one watt, which is the unit by which the capacity of generators and the amount of current consumption is gauged.

One of the disadvantages of primary cells, as those types which utilize zinc as an active element are called, is that the chemical action produces deterioration and waste of material by oxidization. Dry cells are usually proportioned so that the electrolyte and depolarizing materials become weaker as the zinc is used, and when a dry cell is exhausted it is not profitable to attempt to recharge it because new ones can be obtained at a lower cost than the expense of renewing the worn elements would be.

Principles of Storage Battery Construction.—Some voltaic couples are reversible, i. e., they may be recharged when they have become exhausted by passing a current of electricity through them in a direction opposite to that in which the current flows on discharge. Such batteries are known as "accumulators" or "storage batteries." A storage battery belies its name, as it does not really store current, and its action is somewhat similar to that of the simpler chemical cell previously described. In its simplest form a storage cell would consist of two elements and an electrolyte, as outlined at Fig. 1, D. The storage battery differs from the primary cell in that the elements are composed of the same metal before charging takes place, usually lead, instead of being zinc or carbon. One of the plates is termed the "positive," and may

be distinguished from the other because it is brown or chocolate in color after charging, while the negative plate is usually a light gray or leaden color. The active material of a charged storage battery is not metallic lead, but oxides of that material.

The simple form shown at Fig. 1, C, consists of two plates of lead, which are rolled together, separated by insulating bands of rubber at the top and bottom to keep them from touching. This roll is immersed in an electrolyte composed of a weak solution of sulphuric acid in water. Before such a cell can be used it must be charged, which consists of passing a current of electricity through it until the lead plates have changed their nature. After the charging process is complete the lead plates have become so changed in nature that they may be considered as different substances, and a chemical action results between the oxidized plate and the electrolyte and produces current just as in the simple cell shown at Fig. 1, A. When the cell is exhausted the plates return to their discharged condition and are practically the same, and as there is but little difference in electrical condition existing between them, they do not deliver any current until electricity has been passed through the cell so as to change the sulphate on the positive lead plates to peroxide of lead.

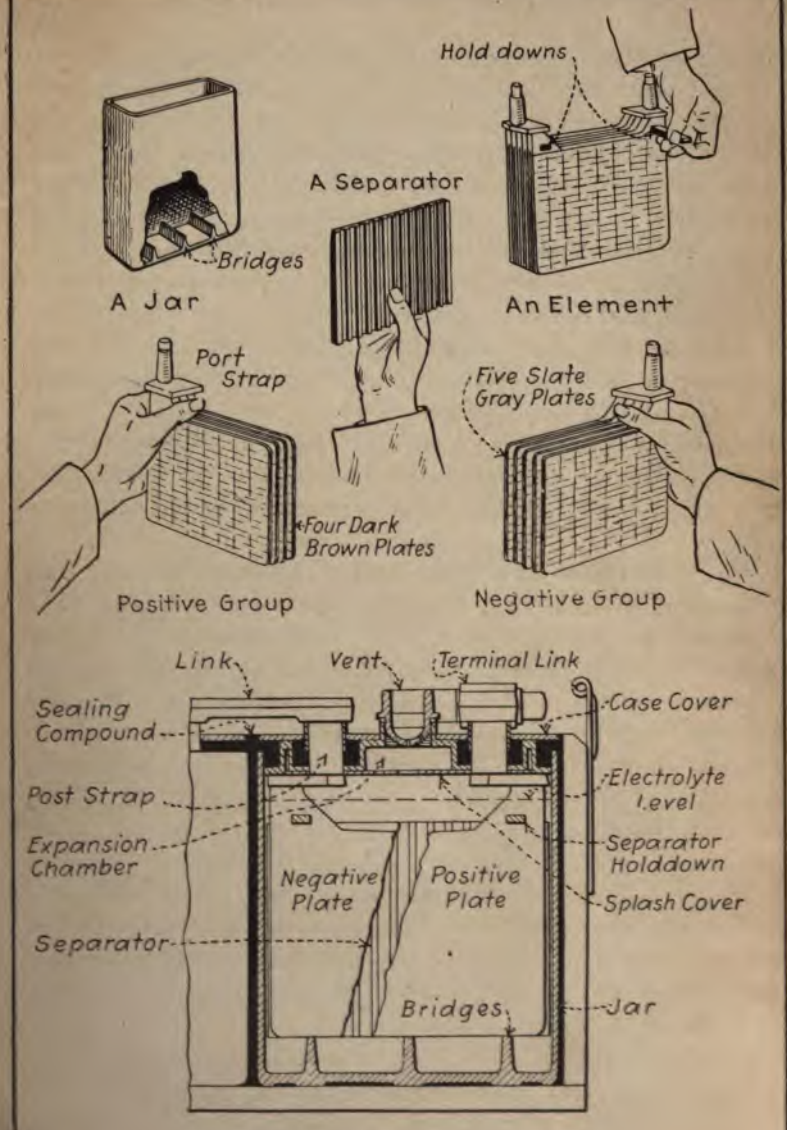
The changes that occur in the plates of a storage battery when a current is passed through them and the electrolyte in which they are placed results in altering their nature to such an extent that they act just the same as two elements of more widely differing nature, such as zinc and copper or zinc and carbon might. Primary cell action depends on the wasting of one of the elements, and the only way that more current can be obtained when the cell is exhausted is by replenishing the electrolyte and also putting in a new plate of metal in place of that eaten away by the acid.

Discovery of Reversible Chemical Action.—The basic principle on which storage battery action is based has been known for over a century, as a French scientist, Gautherot, while experimenting with the electrolysis or decomposition of water in 1801 by passing an electric current through it discovered that the silver or platinum wires employed as electrodes for this purpose would send a current of electricity back through a circuit when the battery

that furnished the decomposing current was removed from them. The electrical flow from the wires was in a reverse direction to that passed through by the main battery, and was naturally very weak. Further studies by other scientists, notably De la Rue, Ritter and Grove, led to the development of a gas battery which was really a variation of the apparatus used in the electrolysis of water. In 1834 Farraday made experiments with lead electrodes that resulted in the development of storage battery forms from which those used to-day are patterned. Following the experiments of Sinsteden, who used plates of nickel, silver and lead in a voltampmeter in 1854 and obtained reverse currents from that instrument of sufficient power to raise a wire to red heat after it had been used in measuring a source of electricity, Gaston Planté, who was familiar with these experiments, did the experimental work that formed the basis for the practical storage battery of to-day.

The early Planté battery consisted of two sheets of lead, which were separated from each other by canvas and immersed in a sulphuric acid and water electrolyte. After sending a current of electricity through from primary cells of the Bunsen type, a much more powerful current was obtained from the lead plates than either Farraday, with his lead peroxide element, or Sinsteden, with his combination of metals, had secured, and as a result he is generally credited as being the inventor of the storage battery. After considerable experimenting Planté found that it was possible to increase the current output of a secondary battery by repeated charges and discharges. It was learned that the capacity augmented with use, and that the lead plate surfaces were changed into lead sulphate and lead oxide, and that the coatings penetrated deeper into the plate with each added charge and discharge.

Inasmuch as the knowledge was available to men of science even at that early day (1860) that the action of electric current on lead plates would cause a chemical change that would in turn result in a reverse current flow, the only drawback to making the storage battery of practical value was the lack of economical means for charging the plates. The dynamo had not been perfected to the point that it reached a few years later, so the only



3.—Sectional View Showing Typical Storage-Battery Cell and Its Principal Parts.

current means available for "forming" or preparing the lead plates was by the action of expensive primary batteries. The first chemical changes that took place were of very limited depth, and even after long service the chemical action of changed material could hardly be measured. It was only by frequent and repeated charges and discharges, extending over months of time, that it was possible to obtain cells with sufficient capacity to be of practical value. Even though laboring under these disadvantages, Planté was able to make numerous cells of this kind and perform laboratory experiments which created great interest among the scientists of that time.

The chemical change which results in the production of electricity in lead plate batteries is rather complicated, and its exact nature is not definitely known even to-day. It was advanced by Planté that the charging action, or rather chemical change when current was passed through the cell from an outside source, resulted in the formation of lead peroxide (PbO_2) on the positive plate and metallic lead on the negative. Both of these were said to be converted into lead oxide (PbO) when the current was drawn from the battery. Later investigations showed that the formation of lead sulphate also was of enough consequence to be taken into consideration. This reaction on discharge is probably about as follows:

Charged Condition Becomes Discharged Condition.

$$\underset{-}{Pb} + 2H_2SO_4 + \underset{+}{PbO_2} = \underset{-}{PbSO_4} + 2H_2O + \underset{+}{PbSO_4}.$$

Therefore, during charging, the plates must be brought to their original state and the sulphate driven out of the plates into the electrolyte, as expressed chemically in the following:

When Discharged. After Charging.

Positive Plate, $PbSO_4 + O + H_2O = PbO_2 + H_2SO_4$.

Negative Plate, $PbSO_4 + 2H = Pb + H_2SO_4$.

Considering the equations previously outlined, it will be evident that the active material on both plates of a storage battery is changed into lead sulphate when the battery discharges. There

are several reasons for considering this theory. The most important is that chemical analysis of a discharged plate has shown large quantities of lead sulphate to exist. The fact that the density of the electrolyte becomes less during the discharge of the cell shows that sulphuric acid is consumed and that water remains. The specific gravity of the electrolyte is greatest when the cell is fully charged. This demonstrates conclusively that during charging the sulphate has been driven out of the plates and into the electrolyte. When a battery is discharged, the sulphate, having been absorbed by the plates, results in a lower specific gravity of the electrolyte. Then, again, considering the matter from an electro-chemist's point of view, it is known that the combination of oxygen and lead as lead oxide would not liberate sufficient electrical energy to account for the voltage of the current produced by the battery on discharge.

Planté, or Formed Plates.—One of the first difficulties met with and one that militated against the development of the practical or commercial type of battery using Planté plates was the great length of time needed and the expensive means of generating the forming current. Later the plates were treated with nitric acid to facilitate the forming action. Other processes have been developed to hasten the formation. In addition to the chemical treatment, which consists of immersing the lead plates in a pickling bath to produce an oxidization before the current acts upon them, there is a mechanical action which will produce the same result and hasten formation. Laminated plates composed of ribbons of lead will form quicker than the solid lead plates, as will elements made up of lead wires or plates where the surface has been grooved with some forming-tool. An electrolytic process consists of making the plate of a lead alloy and eating the foreign matter away to leave a porous lead plate. These processes are described more in detail in the next chapter, which deals specifically with storage battery plate construction.

Faure, or Pasted Plates.—As soon as it was realized that the result of the forming current was the production of lead peroxide on one of the plates, two men, Camille Faure in France and *Charles F. Brush in the* United States, working independently of

each other, devised a process of plate manufacture that materially reduced the cost of construction. Instead of forming the active material by expensive and time-consuming alternating charges and discharges, the common oxides of lead were applied to the surface of the plate in the form of paste, so that the work required of the electric current was reduced appreciably and considerable weight reduction obtained. Litharge, which is rich in lead, was selected for the negative plates, while red lead, which is oxidized more, was used on the plates intended to be positives. The pastes were composed of the oxides mixed with dilute sulphuric acid in the proportion about one part acid to four of water. Such a paste sets very quickly, and only small quantities can be prepared at a time. When the Faure process, as it is called, was first developed, it was believed that the Planté type of plate would be discarded. It was found by practical experience that the new structure developed faults that were not present in the older formation. Pasted plates of early development were found to bend or warp, to enlarge and to shed the active material. In order to eliminate these faults, various ingenious grid patterns were devised.

When storage cells are to be used in automobile work they are combined in a single containing member, as shown at Fig. 4, A, which is a part sectional view of storage battery. The main containing member, a box of wood is divided into three parts by cell jars of hard rubber. Each of these compartments serves to hold the elements comprising one cell. The positive and negative plates are spaced apart by wooden and hard rubber separators, which prevent short circuiting between the plates. After the elements have been put in place in the compartments forming the individual cells of the battery, the top of the jar is sealed by pouring a compound of pitch and rosin, or asphaltum, over cover plates of hard rubber, which keeps the sealing material from running into the cells and on the plates. Vents are provided over each cell, through which gases, produced by charging or discharging, are allowed to escape. These are so formed that while free passage of gas is provided for, it is not possible for the electrolyte to splash out when the vehicle is in motion.

It will be evident that this method of sealing would not be

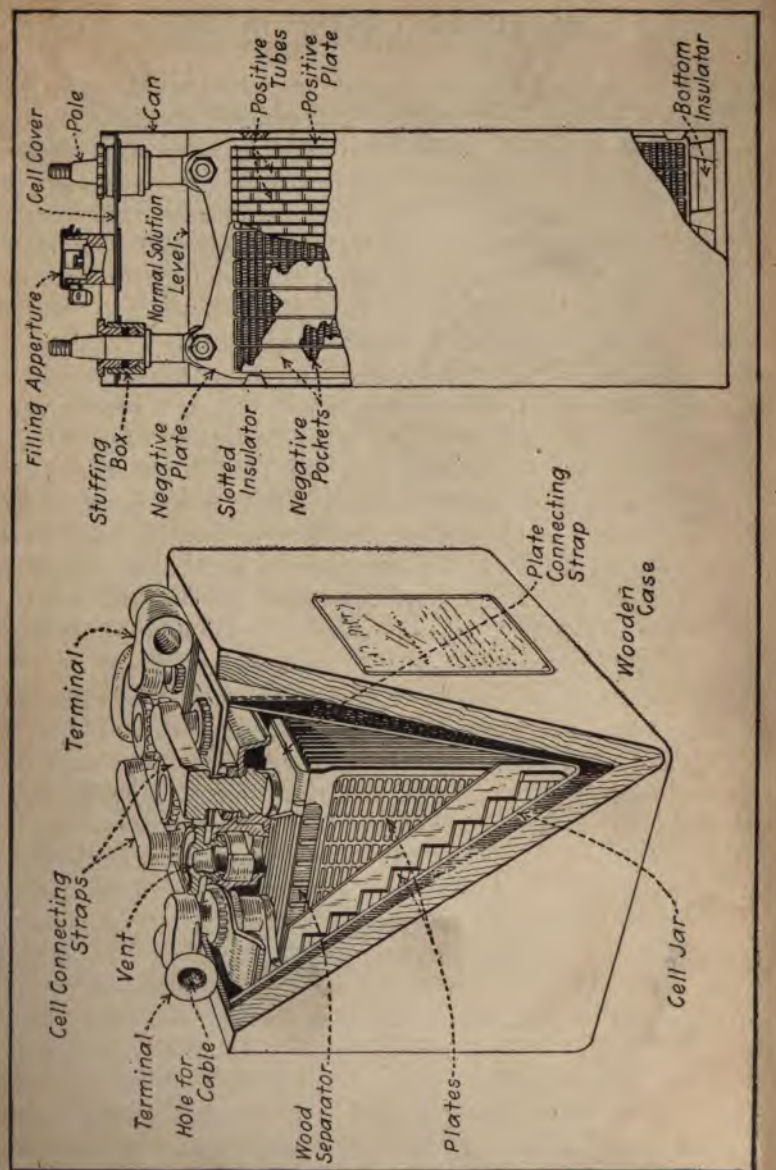


Fig. 4.—Illustrating Standard Batteries Operating on Different Principles. A—Part Sectional View of Automobile Starting, Lighting and Ignition Battery. B—Internal Construction of Edison Alka-*line Cell.*

practical on a primary cell where the members attacked by the acid had to be replaced from time to time, but in a storage battery only the electrolyte need be renewed. When the plates are discharged they are regenerated by passing a current of electricity through them. New electrolyte can be easily inserted through vents in which caps are screwed. The cells of which a storage battery is composed are nearly always joined together at the factory with bars of lead, which are burned in place, and only two free terminals are provided by which the battery is coupled to the outer circuit.

The capacity of a storage battery depends upon the area and the number of plates per cell, while the potential or voltage is determined by the number of cells joined in series to form the battery. Each cell has a difference of potential of two and two-tenths volts when fully charged, therefore a two-cell battery will deliver a current of four and four-tenths volts, and a three-cell type as shown at Fig. 4, A, will give about six and six-tenths volts between the terminals. While dry cells are often connected in parallel, storage batteries should not be coupled in this manner, as the sets do not divide the load properly unless all the cells are equal in charge, capacity and general condition. A bad cell may so weaken one set that the other set will discharge through it, reducing the charge seriously. When sets are used in parallel it is advisable to test the sets separately. If one set is doing a large proportion of the work, the gravity of the electrolyte will be different in the sets. It is advisable to change parallel sets to series, when practicable, for charging at terminal stations. This insures the same charge being put in each set. For similar reasons all the cells used in a set should be in the same condition and equally well charged to prevent one or more cells reversing in service.

The Edison Storage Battery.—The fundamental principle of the Edison storage battery shown at Fig. 4, B, is the oxidization and reduction of metals in an electrolyte which neither combines with nor dissolves either the active materials or their oxides. Also, an electrolyte which, notwithstanding its decomposition by the action of the electric current, is immediately re-formed in equal quantity, and is, therefore, a practically constant element with-

out change of density or conductivity over long periods of time. A storage battery is commonly looked upon as a receptacle in which to *store electricity.* Electricity is not concrete matter. In fact, nobody knows just *what it is.* Therefore, in the general apprehension of the term, it is not *stored.* Electricity simply causes a chemical change to be effected in certain substances, when it is caused to flow through them. These substances in endeavoring return to their original state, produce electricity.

The following elementary explanation of the action of the non-acid battery is given by the Edison Storage Battery Company, and is so simply expressed and easily understood that it is reproduced in full. If the reader grasps the principles expressed, he will have no difficulty in understanding the chemical action that results in current production.

"Suppose we place two pieces of very thin, bright steel out of doors for a few weeks. They become 'rusted.' The action of the oxygen on the outer layer of the metal has formed it into an oxide commonly known as 'rust.' Now let us place these two pieces of steel in a solution composed of potash and water, and connect them by wires to a small dynamo. The electricity, in flowing from the dynamo through the solution, from one of the plates to the other and back to the dynamo, changes the rust to metallic iron on one of the plates, but causes the other plate to become 'rusted' twice as much as before. Now let us disconnect the plates from the dynamo and connect them, by means of pieces of wire, to an ammeter (an instrument for measuring electricity). Instantly, the excess of oxygen in the rust on the one plate commences to pass back to the bright plate and, by so doing, causes electricity to be generated. Why? Nobody really knows. We have now charged and discharged a primitive storage battery.

"Instead of two thin rusted steel plates, let us mount, say, one hundred such plates, equidistantly spaced, on one rod, and one hundred more on another rod. Now interpose the two groups so the plates of the one group will not touch those of the other and immerse them in a solution of potash. When connected to our dynamo the electricity will flow from one group, through the solution, *to the other group,* converting the oxide of one group to

metallic iron, and increasing the amount of oxide on the other group. We shall be able to get much more electricity from the battery thus formed, because of the greater plate *surface* exposed. We have thus determined that large *surface* is necessary.

"Let us next place a quantity of fine particles of iron rust in two perforated flat steel pockets and, after putting these pockets into potash solution, pass electricity from one to the other, through the solution, as before. All the iron rust in one pocket will be changed to metallic iron, because the oxygen will have passed over to the iron rust in the other pocket, causing this material to possess twice as much oxygen as before.

"Connect the two pockets to your ammeter and you will find that much more electricity is flowing than before, although the two pockets take up much less space than the two hundred steel plates. The reason of this is, the small particles present a very great combined surface to the solution. Suppose, after having made a great number of experiments, you put some iron rust or iron oxide into perforated steel pockets, and mount a number of these pockets in a steel grid or support to form one plate, and place nickel hydrate (a green powder) in perforated steel receptacles, and mount them on another steel grid to form the other plate, then immerse them in a suitable alkaline electrolyte in any kind of container; you have the essential elements of an Edison cell."

The active material of the positive plate of the Edison storage battery is nickel hydrate; that of the negative plate, iron oxide. The electrolyte is a solution of potassium hydrate. The active materials are perfectly insoluble in the electrolyte. When current passes, either on charge or discharge, the electrolyte is broken up into its component parts, which react on the materials with the following results: On charge—Positive oxidized, negative reduced. On discharge—Positive reduced, negative oxidized. The exact chemical changes that go on within the cell are not definitely known, but those occurring during discharge may be approximately represented by the following equations:

$$\text{Positive: } 8K + 6NiO_2 = 2Ni_2O_4 + 4K_2O.$$

$$\text{Negative: } 8OH + 3Fe = Fe_3O_4 + 4H_2O.$$

The reverse reactions take place on charge. The iron and nickel compounds are probably hydrated, but are here treated as pure oxides, for the sake of simplicity. It will be noted that the same amount of KOH is decomposed, according to the left-hand members of these equations, as is re-formed, simultaneously, as shown on the right. For this reason, the chemical composition, or specific gravity, of the solution does not change appreciably throughout the cycle of charge and discharge.

CHAPTER II

How Storage Batteries Differ in Construction—Batteries Using Other Than Lead Plates—Details of Planté Process—Advantages of Faure Process—Lead Plate Construction—Gould Plates—Combination Faure and Planté Batteries—Exide Plates—Exide "Iron Clad" Plate—Edison Alkaline Battery—Function of Separators.

How Storage Batteries Differ in Construction.—It is not reasonable to expect that any one type of storage battery can be applied universally. Naturally, batteries must be proportioned for the work they are to do. Batteries for stationary work in power plants can be of the open-cell type; those intended for vehicle or boat use should be sealed to prevent danger of splashing out the electrolyte. Various forms of storage batteries are illustrated at Fig. 5. The stationary type in glass or rubber jars is used for isolated lighting plants, telephone, telegraph and signal service and yacht lighting. The larger stationary cells are assembled in lead-lined wood tanks, and are used for electric railways, stand-by service in central stations for lighting and power and in large isolated lighting plants. Special types in rubber jars are assembled in trays for electric vehicle service, and still others for train-lighting service. The usual starting, lighting and ignition battery for automobile use is a unit in which three or more cells are imbedded in insulating compound and carried in a substantial wooden case. The usual practice is to burn all the connecting straps to the plate group terminals and cover the whole with sealing compound. Special gas vents are needed with these batteries. The "couple" type is carried in glass jars and is widely used for signal, fire alarm and private telephone service.

Storage Batteries Using Other Than Lead Plates.—While there is really only one make of cell that is commercially practical that does not use lead plates, this being the Edison, inventors have endeavored to improve storage battery action for some time by try-

ing other combinations of metals. A number of other couples or elements have been found that will permit a reversing chemical

Fig. 5.—How Storage Batteries Differ in Construction. A—Automobile Type. B—Couple Type. C—Glass Jar, Open Type. D—Large Wooden Tank Type for Heavy Duty Service.

action, but most of these are of such a nature that they are interesting additions to a scientist's laboratory rather than contributions *to industrial progress.* Storage battery plates have been made up

entirely of active material. An experimenter has used a positive plate made entirely of litharge (PbO) mixed with ammonium sulphate $(NH_4)2SO_4$, which is pressed into the desired shape. Chemical treatment converts the plate to lead peroxide. The negative plate is the conventional lead type. This is really a lead plate type, and must be considered as distinct from the non-lead types.

It is a known fact that almost any primary cell can be made to

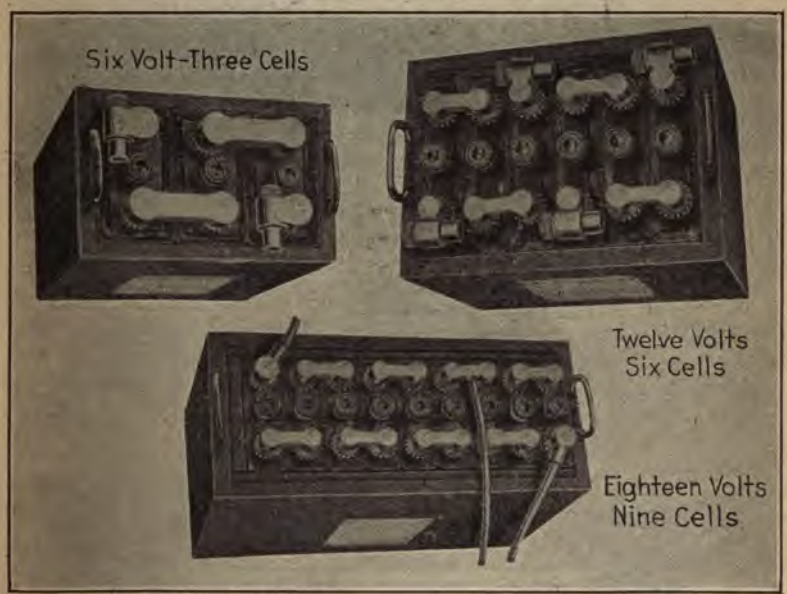


Fig. 6.—Showing Method of Grouping Storage Cells to Form Starting, Lighting and Ignition Batteries.

have some of the characteristics of a storage battery. The experiments in the electrolysis or decomposition of water by using silver or platinum electrodes demonstrates that these substances can be used, though their prohibitive cost renders them only of scientific interest. Zinc has been used for a negative element instead of lead, the surface zinc being converted into zinc sulphate, which dissolved into the electrolyte. Using zinc instead

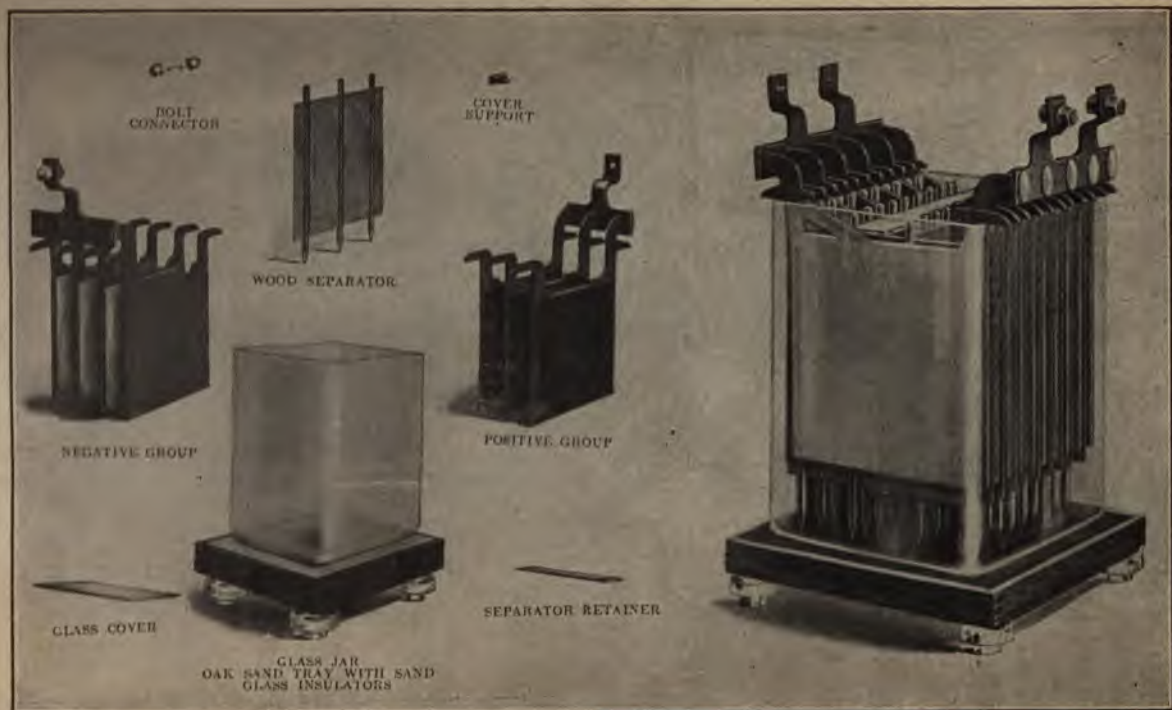


Fig. 7.—Gould Storage Battery of the Type Used for Isolated Lighting Plants.

of lead gives an increase in voltage, the normal 2.2 augmenting to 2.5 volts. A reduction of weight is also possible, because zinc plates can be lighter than lead one of the same capacity.

The disadvantage is the formation of zinc deposits during charging in the shape of clusters or "trees," which may short-circuit the cell by extending across to the positive element or increase the sediment by dropping to the bottom. Another disadvantage is that the solution will vary in density at different heights. The zinc sulphate is taken from the top of the liquid during charging. Attempts have been made to prevent this by placing the plates horizontally and thus having practically the same density electrolyte surrounding each plate. The fault of this arrangement is that gas bubbles polarize the cell by collecting between the plates. In a vertical plate cell the bubbles rise to the top of the electrolyte and burst, liberating the confined gas, which reaches the atmosphere easily in an open-type cell and through a vent in the sealed types.

Another cell has a negative plate consisting of thin sheet copper amalgamized with zinc. The positives are made of lead leaves perforated with numerous small holes and riveted together, and are formed by the Planté process. The copper-alkali-zinc battery of Lalande and Chaperon and improved by Edison is reversible in action and can be used as a storage battery. When discharged, the positive plate is porous copper; on charging, the decomposition of the electrolyte follows, metallic zinc is deposited on the negative plate, while the porous copper becomes oxidized on the positive. The electrolyte becomes potassium hydrate. This cell may really be considered the ancestor of the modern Edison cell. This storage battery has been used commercially in a limited way, but is not really practical because of its low voltage, that of one cell being but seven-tenths of a volt. That means that three times as many cells would be needed to obtain a certain voltage given by the smaller number of lead plate cells. The weight factor is a serious one that militates against the wide commercial use of low voltage cells. The lead plate type has many practical advantages, but its ability to stand rapid discharge, its great efficiency and its *high E.M.F.* are among the most important ones.

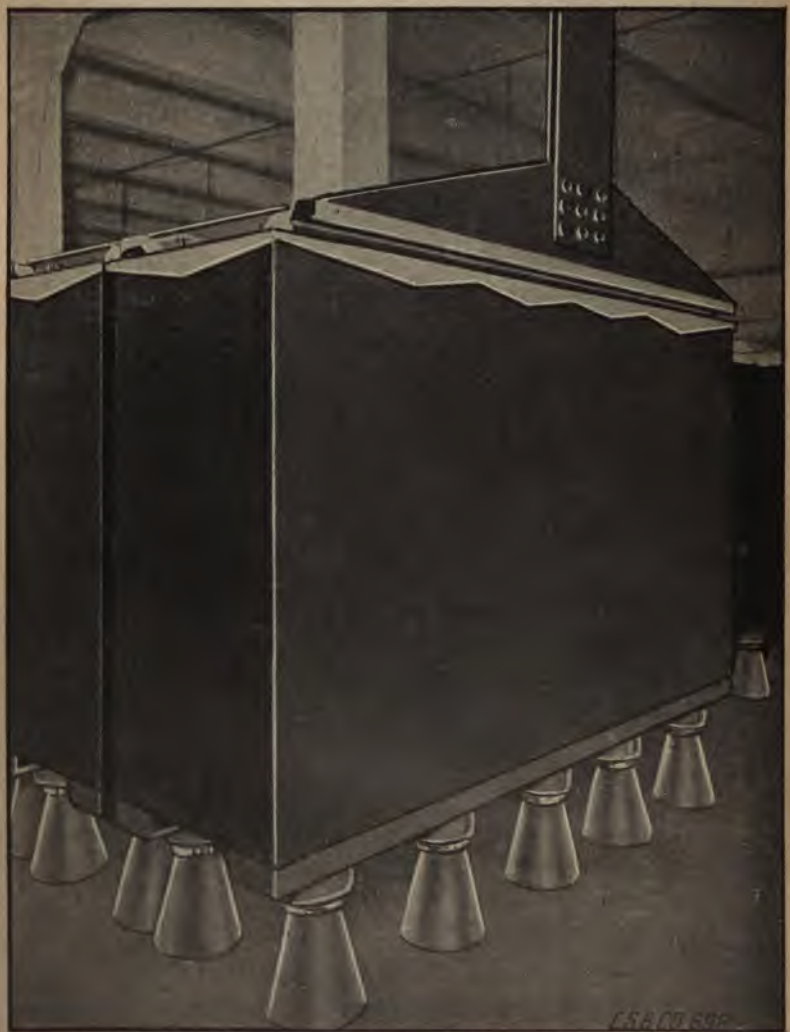


Fig. 8.—Type of Electric Storage Battery Company Cell for Stand-by and Booster Service.

Making Planté Process Plates.—It is evident that even with the present low cost of electric current makers of storage batteries employing Planté elements must have a more commercial method of forming these than the repeated charge and discharge processes followed by the originator of this type of plate. It is also apparent that the electro-chemical action would form but a very thin layer of active material on plain lead sheets. In order to have a sufficient volume of it to generate an appreciable current it is necessary to provide a larger surface than prevails on an ordinary sheet of lead. To provide more surface, the usual process is to groove the lead plates in order to provide a sufficiently large area so that the forming process will produce an element of sufficient capacity to be commercially practical. The lead peroxide formed on such plates is positively held in the spaces between the ribs or laminations designed to increase the surface.

Various systems of increasing the surface of lead sheets to increase the available area are by grooving, swedging, laminating, scoring or casting the pockets or retaining ribs integrally. A typical Planté process plate used in the Gould battery, with sectional views showing the structure if the plate is cut on lines A-B or C-D, is shown at Fig. 9, and the method of forming clearly outlined at Fig. 10. In the manufacture of these plates the "spinning" process is followed, as this is said to give the greatest possible increased surface and least modification in form of rim and groove. The blank plate, including the lug, is stamped from chemically pure rolled lead and placed in a steel frame, which reciprocates between two revolving mandrels, on which thin circular steel discs and spacing washers are placed. It is on the form and thickness of the discs that the width and shape of the grooves depend, and the thickness of the rib is regulated by the width of the spacing washers. The travel of the frame obviously determines the length of the section to be spun.

The pressure of the "spinning" rolls against the surface of the lead blank is maintained at a uniform point by compressed air, and the ridges and grooves begin to appear as soon as the operation is started. At the start the section is as shown at Fig. 10, B-1. As the spinning discs progress further and further into the

lead they displace it and cause it to flow in the form of ribs in the spaces between the cutting discs. The first action is to groove the surface of the lead plate, as shown at Fig. 10, B-2, this section becoming more and more like 3 and 4, as the pressure of the disc causes more metal to be displaced. The blank is merely changed in form, as no lead is removed, and there is not cutting and subsequent bending to open up pores in the metal. The discs leave an

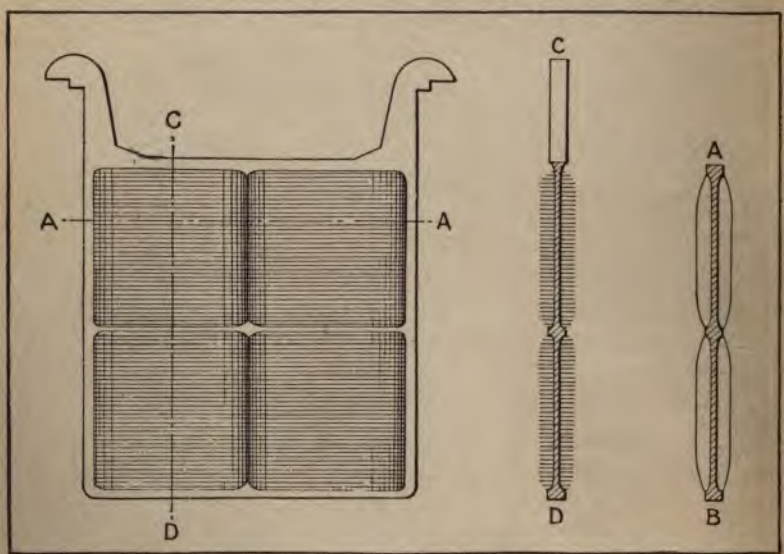


Fig. 9.—Gould Storage-Battery Plate Made by Planté Process.

unspun portion at the end of travel of the frame, in which each individual rib terminates, thus forming a main cross bar at each extremity. The two bars unite at the junction of two spun sections in a single cross bar of diamond section, solid metal, extending the width of the plate. By limiting the depth that the rolls penetrate the blank, it is possible to provide a web of metal that remains as a central conductor and current equalizer.

On the surface of plates thus produced a thin layer of lead peroxide, which is the active material of the positive plate, is formed by the electrolytic process. Negative plates are formed by

a subsequent conversion of the lead peroxide to "spongy" lead, which constitutes the active material for these plates. Finally, the plates are subjected to a special treatment to remove any impurities. An advantage of the spinning process is that the ribs are not cut and subsequently bent, as in some of the other methods of producing Planté plates. It is said that bending, because of the crystalline properties of lead, opens up pores for the penetration of electrolytic action, and that such ribs may be eventually cut off by the chemical action after the battery has been in use

Fig. 10.—Planté Plate and How It is Grooved by Mechanical Means to Facilitate Forming.

for a time. It is also stated that cast lead is not equal to the rolled or spun lead for battery plates on account of its porosity. The parts of a typical Gould cell used for train-lighting service and the method of grouping two of these cells in trays to make for easy handling is clearly shown at Fig. 11.

Manufacture of Faure Type Plates.—Most of the lead plate type storage batteries now used have "pasted" plates instead of the more expensive formed plates. The foundation of a Faure type plate consists of a skeleton or plate grid, such as shown in Figs. 13 and 14, made from an alloy of antimony and lead, to

which the active material is mechanically applied. The original Faure cell had both the positive and negative plates coated with red lead. But a comparatively short time was required to change the red lead to lead peroxide on the anode or to metallic lead on the cathode. The great advantage of this construction was the high capacity for unit weight. There is a disadvantage, and that is that if the plates are not very carefully made the active material may drop away from the grid pockets and fall to the bottom of the cell. These have been largely overcome at the present time by forming the grids to hold the applied material more firmly. The reason that pure lead is not used to make grids is that it does not have enough rigidity or strength for use when the active material is applied by mechanical means. The soft lead grids might be bent, which would tend to loosen the active material. This is true to a certain degree of Planté plates, but inasmuch as the active material is generally formed on small surfaces separate from each other, and as it is much thinner than in the applied types, there is not so much danger of the material falling off.

In order to increase the strength of the lead grid it is necessary to add some substance that will make a stiffer skeleton, but of course this material should not change the electrical characteristics of the grid to any extent. Antimony is the material ordinarily added, and the proportions of the resulting alloy may vary from 88% lead and 12% of this metal to 98% lead and but 2% of antimony. It is stated that the usual mixture is 4% antimony and 96% lead. Positive grids should have more lead in their composition than the grids intended to be made into negative plates. While in many cases the active material is applied to the plates by hand, it is advanced that machine-pasted plates make more enduring batteries.

Combination Planté and Faure Types.—The "Chloride" battery, which was manufactured for a time by the Electric Storage Battery Company, is a compromise between the two types. In this cell the positive plate is a Planté type, and the negative follows the Faure principle of construction. Finely divided lead is produced by blowing a stream of air against a stream of molten

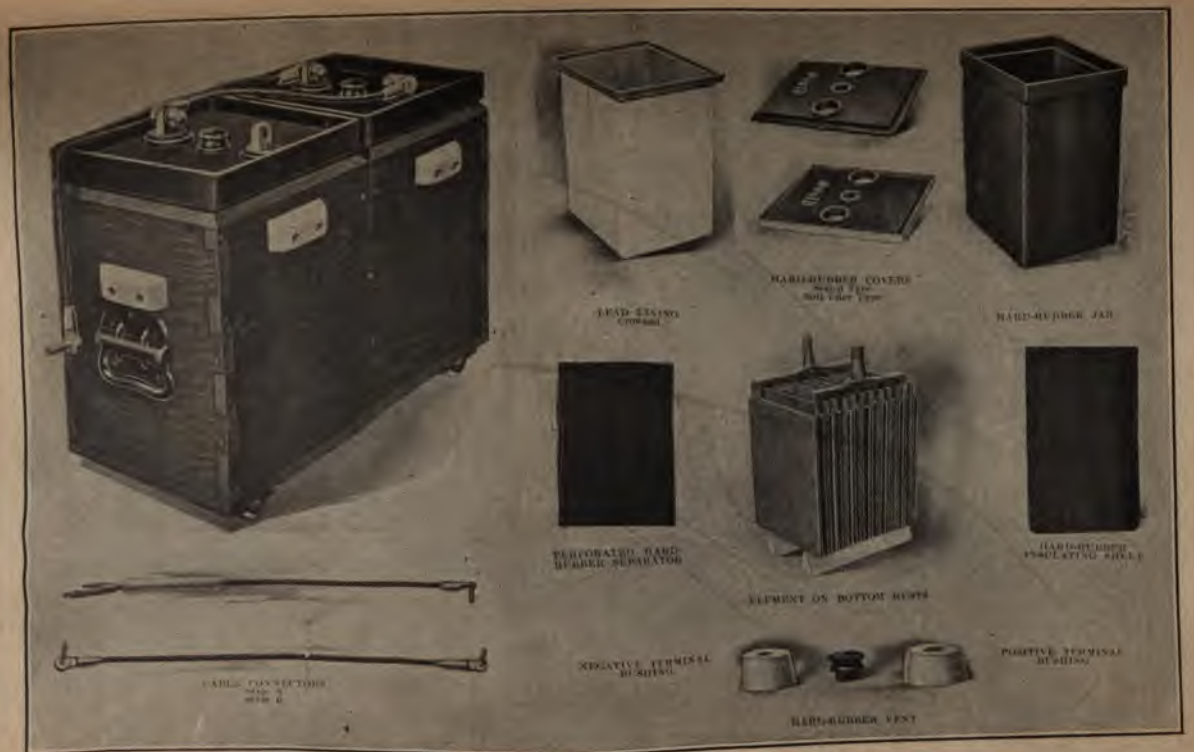


Fig. 11.—The Gould Railway Lighting Battery and Its Principal Parts.

metal, which result in the production of a lead spray, which falls as a powder when cooled. Nitric acid is used to dissolve this powder, which precipitates as lead chloride when hydrochloric acid is added. After this material is washed and dried it forms the basis of the filling of the negative plates. A mixture of this lead chloride and zinc chloride is melted in crucibles and poured into moulds, which produce small tablets about ¾ of an inch square and of a thickness varying from ¼ to 5/16 of an inch, depending upon the thickness of the negative plate. These tablets are then assembled in special moulds and held in place by recesses, into which they fit and which prevent movement. They are kept at a distance of about .2 inch from each other and from the mould edges. Molten antimonious lead is then poured in to fill the spaces between the tablets, and to insure a proper flow of metal it is forced into the mould under approximately 75 pounds pressure. Upon cooling, the result is a solid lead grid, in which the small squares of active material are imbedded. The next step is to reduce the lead chloride by placing the plates in a dilute solution of zinc chloride, each plate being separated from its neighbor by a slab of zinc. By assembling the plates in this manner the equivalent of "short circuiting" a cell is obtained, and the lead chloride is reduced to metallic lead. The zinc chloride is removed from the plates by thoroughly washing them.

A new form of negative plate which is now manufactured to replace the chloride type just described consists of a pocketed grid, the openings of which are filled with litharge paste and afterward covered with perforated lead sheets, which are formed by casting integrally with the grid. The grid used for the positive plate is composed of a 5% antimony-lead alloy and is about 7/16 inch thick, having circular holes about ¾ of an inch in diameter, staggered so that the nearest points are about 3/32 of an inch apart. Close spirals are rolled up of corrugated lead ribbon of the same width as the plate thickness, and these are forced into the circular holes of the plate. The spirals are formed into active material by the electro-chemical process, and during this the spirals expand sufficiently so they fit closer to the grid des. This form of positive is known as the Manchester plate

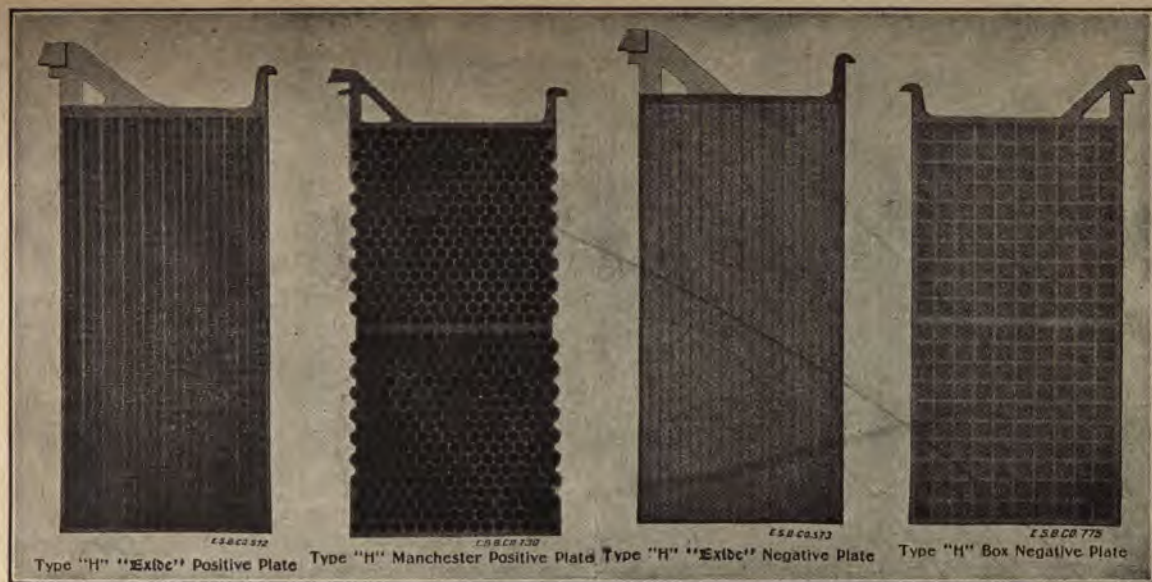


Fig. 12.—Types of Exide Storage-Battery Plates Used in Large Batteries.

and is illustrated at Fig. 12. The box negative plate, the construction of which has been previously described, is also shown at Fig. 12.

"Iron Clad" Exide Battery.—The capacity of the conventional pasted type Exide plate rises in service for a time and then gradually becomes less. The initial rating is conservative, however, so that if a battery is given a proper initial charge it will give its rated discharge at the start. This will gradually increase in use, so that the output becomes greater, and then there is a dropping off from the maximum. This rise in capacity when the battery

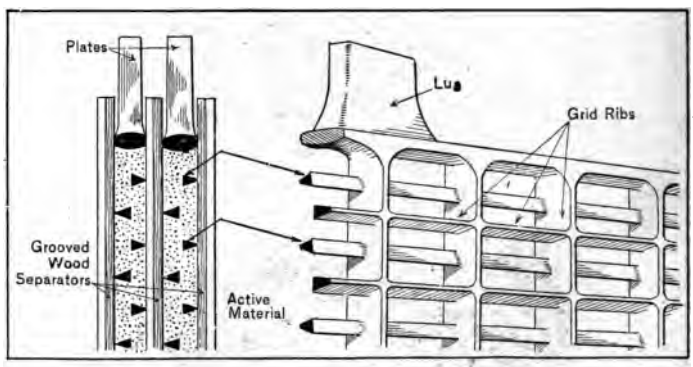


Fig. 13.—Sectional View of Grid, Showing Form of Ribs to Hold Active Material.

is first put into service results from the increasing porosity of the active material on the positive plate. The more porous this active material the better the electrolyte diffuses through it and more lead peroxide is brought into action on each cycle of charge and discharge. This increase in capacity is evidently made at the expense of the positive active material, because as more is brought into action the active mass becomes softer, and the time comes when some of the material must be dislodged when the battery is charged and it will settle to the cell bottom in the form of sediment. This explains why the life of a battery is shortened by too much charging. The capacity will augment just as long as the rate of increase in the porosity of the active material is greater

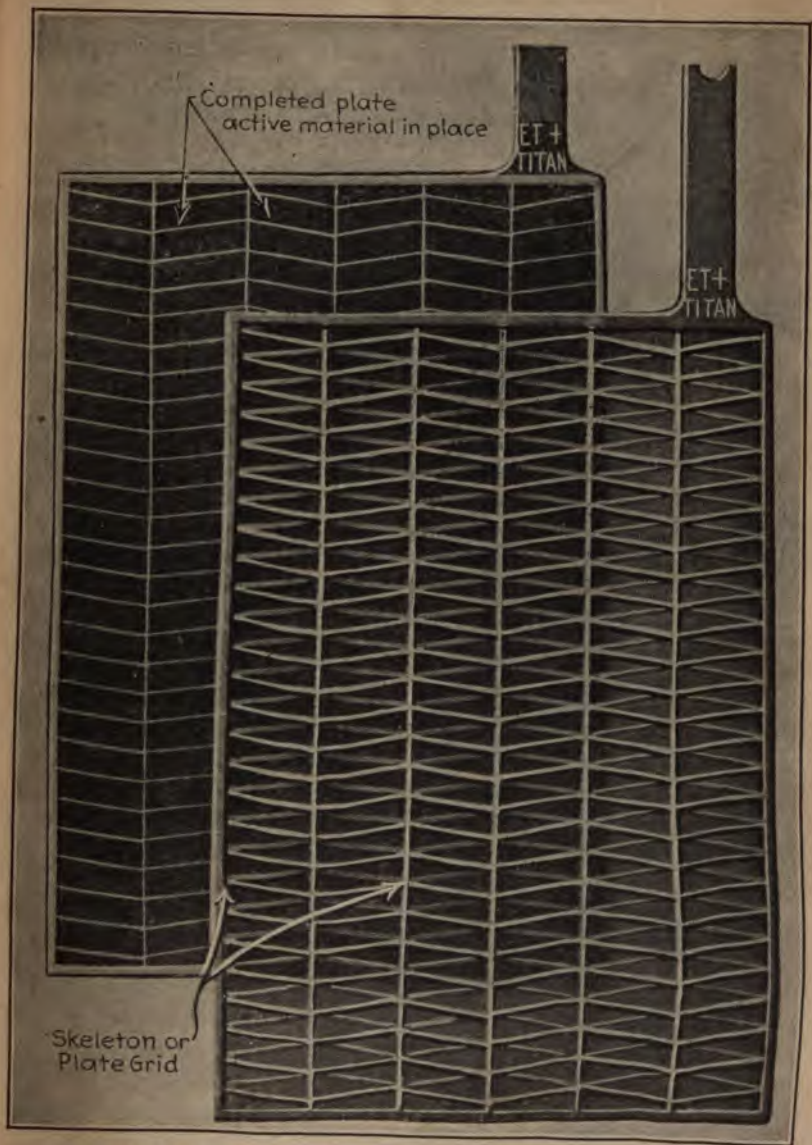


Fig. 14.—The Diamond Grid Plate Before and After Active Material is Put in Place.

than the rate at which the active material loosens from the plate. After a period of use the loss of material will become greater than the gain in porosity, and it is evident that the cell will begin to lose capacity when this condition is reached.

It is evident that if the positive active material could be prevented from dropping off and still be maintained in a healthy operating condition that the plates would have longer life. While improvements have been made from time to time in the construction of the elements, the new form of positive was evolved. This was accomplished by keeping the active material in position by utilizing a pencil of lead peroxide surrounding a conducting core and enclosed in a porous tube having a sufficient elasticity so that as the active material expanded and contracted, because of alterations in its molecular structure, the containing tube compensated for these variations. The positive plate of the "Iron Clad" Exide consists of an alloy framework comprising top and bottom bars integrally connected by conducting cores of the same metal. The uniform pencils of active material surround these cores and are protected by horizontally laminated rubber tubes.

Each tube is formed with narrow vertical ribs diametrically opposite each other, which take the place of the spacing ribs on the ordinary wooden separator and at the same time re-enforce the tube. By thus protecting the active material and holding it in position it remains active for a considerable time. Excellent conductivity and increased accessibility for the electrolyte are obtained, thereby making it possible to secure a relatively high output from a comparatively small quantity of active material. This battery, which is illustrated at Fig. 17 A, having the positive plate shown at B, was given its name because of its remarkable durability. The negative plate of this battery, which is shown at Fig. 17 C, is of the same general construction as the regular Exide negatives, but is made somewhat thicker in order to compensate for the longer life of the positive plate.

The wood separator used between the plates of this battery is a sheet of chemically treated wood and is flat on both sides. No ıbber separators are required, inasmuch as the positive plate pro- ɜs its own separator in having the ribbed rubber tubes to retain

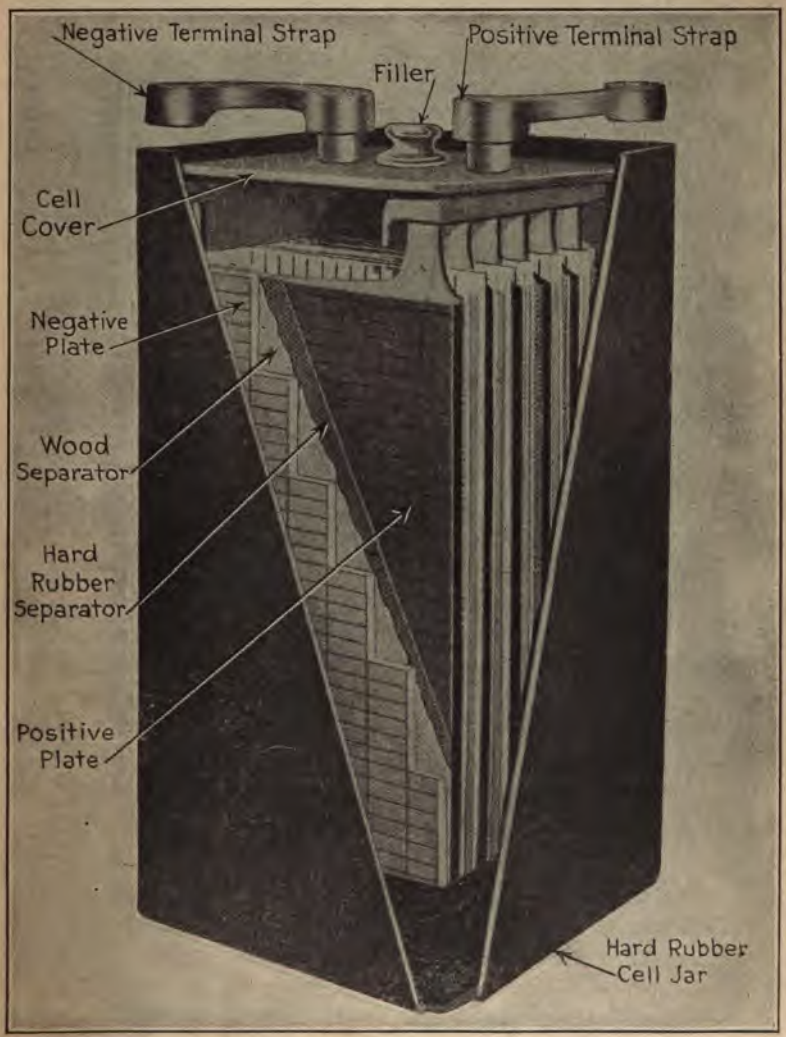


Fig. 15.—Part Sectional View of Type MV 15 Exide Vehicle Battery.

the active material. This is a very popular battery for electric vehicle use because it has a high discharge voltage and is of high efficiency. Flexible pillar strap connectors are regular equipment on "Iron Clad" Exide batteries. These consist of alloy terminals cast around lead plated copper strips, which give greater conductivity and which are more flexible than the stiff pillar-strap connectors used with the Exide standard lead plate batteries. The jar is the same as used for the Exide cells of similar size. A special type of vent is provided, which insures positive retention of the electrolyte yet permits the escape of gas evolved when the battery is charged. The top of the vehicle type cell with vent in place is shown at Fig. 17 E, while the method of sealing is clearly outlined at Fig. 17 D.

The Edison Alkaline Storage Battery.—This is the only battery built of steel. It is the only storage battery having an alkaline solution and using active materials of nickel hydrate (positive) and iron oxide (negative). This construction and principle are said to have important advantages, and some of these are: It is light in weight. It occupies less space. Requires no spare parts. Its steel container is unbreakable. Requires very little attention. It suffers small loss of charge when idle. Does not need frequent hydrometer readings. Its tray assembly and cell connections are simple. It cannot suffer from sulphation or any kindred "disease." Its exclusive use eliminates the need of a battery house. It is not subject to buckling or growing of plates. It may be discharged to zero, or as low as may be desired, without fear of injury. It requires no internal cleaning, the active materials being held securely in perforated steel tubes and pockets. It may be left unused, either charged or discharged, for an indefinite time, without any attention, and suffer no injury. Its cells are hermetically sealed, except for the single filler opening, indicating conclusively that no plate renewals, separator renewals or other repairs are needed or expected. It can be put on charge at any time, regardless of how much or how little of the previous charge has been used; and similarly it may be taken off charge any time and used, whether fully charged or not.

The positive plates (Fig. 19) consist of a series of perforated

steel tubes which are heavily nickel-plated and which are filled with alternate layers of nickel hydroxide and pure metallic nickel in very thin plates. The tube is drawn from a perforated ribbon

POSITIVE STRAP (TYPE "L")
VENT (SOFT RUBBER) COVER (HARD RUBBER)
NEGATIVE STRAP (TYPE "L")
CROSS BAR (PART OF STRAP)
HOLD-DOWN
PLATE LUG
POSITIVE PLATE
HARD RUBBER SHEET (PERFORATED) (AGAINST POSITIVE PLATE)
WOOD SEPARATOR (FLAT SIDE AGAINST NEGATIVE PLATE GROOVED SIDE AGAINST RUBBER SHEET)
NEGATIVE PLATE
HARD RUBBER JAR
JAR BRIDGE

Fig. 16.—Part Sectional View of Gould Pasted Plate Cell.

of steel, nickel-plated, and has a spiral-lapped seam. After being filled with active material it is re-enforced with eight steel bands, which prevent the tube expanding away from and breaking con-

tact with its contents. The negative plate consists of a grid of cold-rolled steel, also heavily nickel-plated, holding a number of rectangular pockets filled with powdered iron oxide. These pockets are also made up of finely perforated steel, nickel-plated. After the pockets are filled they are inserted in the grid and subjected

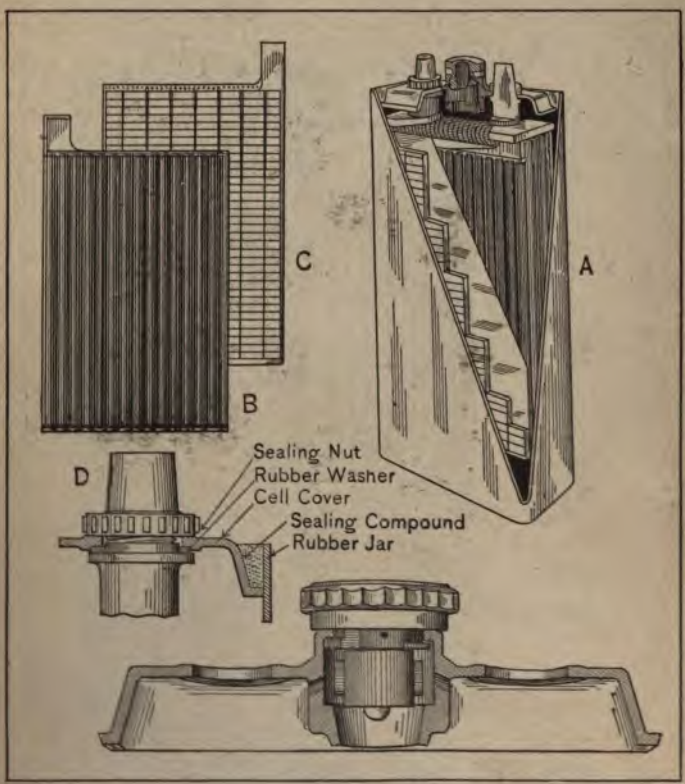


Fig. 17.—Constructional Features of the Exide "Iron Clad" Vehicle Battery.

to considerable pressure between dies, which corrugate the surfaces of the pockets and force them into positive contact with e grids.

These elements are housed in a jar or container made from

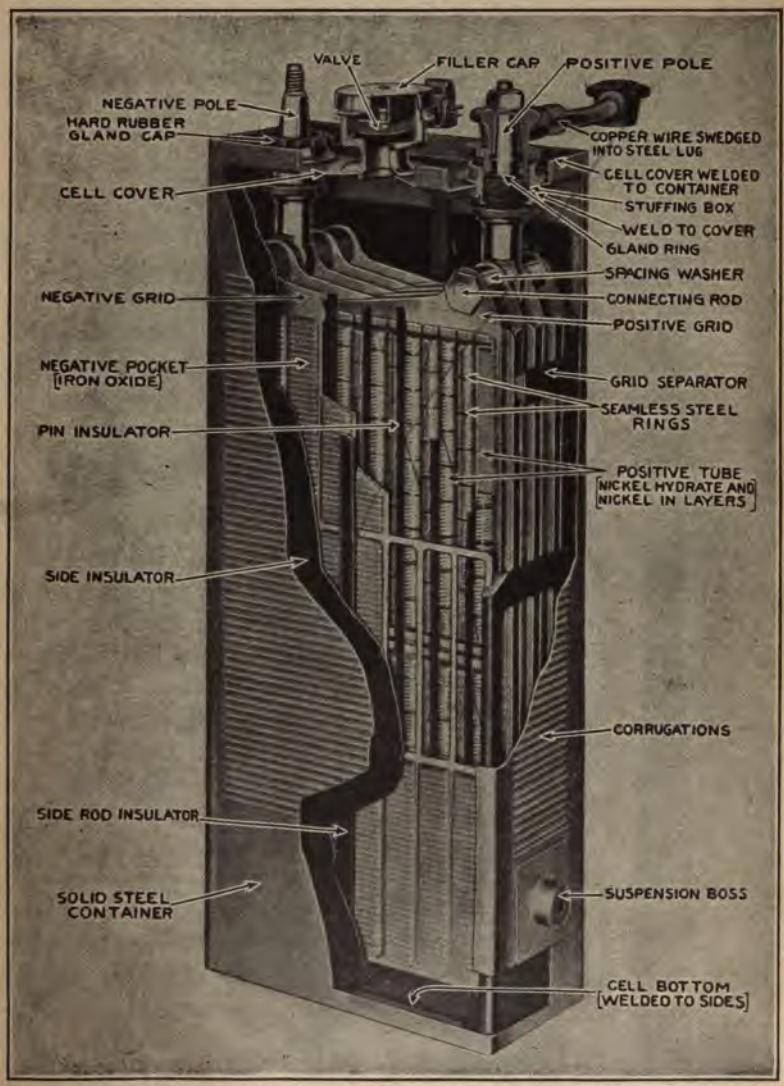


Fig. 18.—Part Sectional View of Edison Alkaline Battery, Showing Internal Arrangement of Plates and Relation of Principal Parts to Each Other.

cold-rolled steel, which is thoroughly welded at the seams and heavily nickel-plated, as shown at Fig. 18. The plates are assembled in positive and negative groups by means of threaded steel rods passing through holes in one corner of the plates and insulating washers. The terminal post is secured to the middle of the rod. The complete element or plate assembly stands on hard rubber bridges on the bottom of the can, and is kept out of contact with the sides of the container by hard rubber spacers attached to the end. The can cover is also of sheet steel, and contains fittings through which the electrodes pass, these being insulated from the cover by bushings of insulating material. A combined filling aperture and vent plug is secured to the center of the cover plate. The general arrangement of the Edison cell parts is clearly outlined at Fig. 18; the plate construction is depicted at Fig. 19, as well as the tubes from the positive plate and pockets used in the negatives.

Function of Separator.—Separators are necessary to keep plates of opposite polarity apart, and yet the space between the plates should be as small as possible in order to keep the internal resistance of the cells to a low point. It is apparent that current used to overcome internal resistance cannot be used in the external circuit. Separators may be of rubber, glass or wood. Perforated rubber sheets have been used, but these are not considered as good as wood separators, and are usually used in connection with them. Glass separators are used only in the largest cells, and usually consist of a series of vertical rods between the plates. Wood is used on all small cells. The material is specially selected and chemically treated. They are made very thin, and after cutting from seasoned wood they receive treatment to remove any elements that might cause damage if left in the wood. Thereafter, the separator strips are kept soaking in a weak electrolyte solution until they are installed in batteries. They must never be allowed to dry out, and even in transit from factory to service station they should be packed in such a way as to retain their moisture.

In impressing this matter on users of their batteries, the U. S. L. and H. Co. gives the following suggestions: "The owner must likewise do his part with the water cure as outlined above, to

prevent the separators from drying out in service. Once dried out a separator can never again, with or without water, be the same, but loses its vitality and is prone to split and undermine the battery's health. A badly shattered separator, of course, invites a direct short circuit, with resultant internal discharge of the cell. But battery plates seem eager to get together, and even a split in

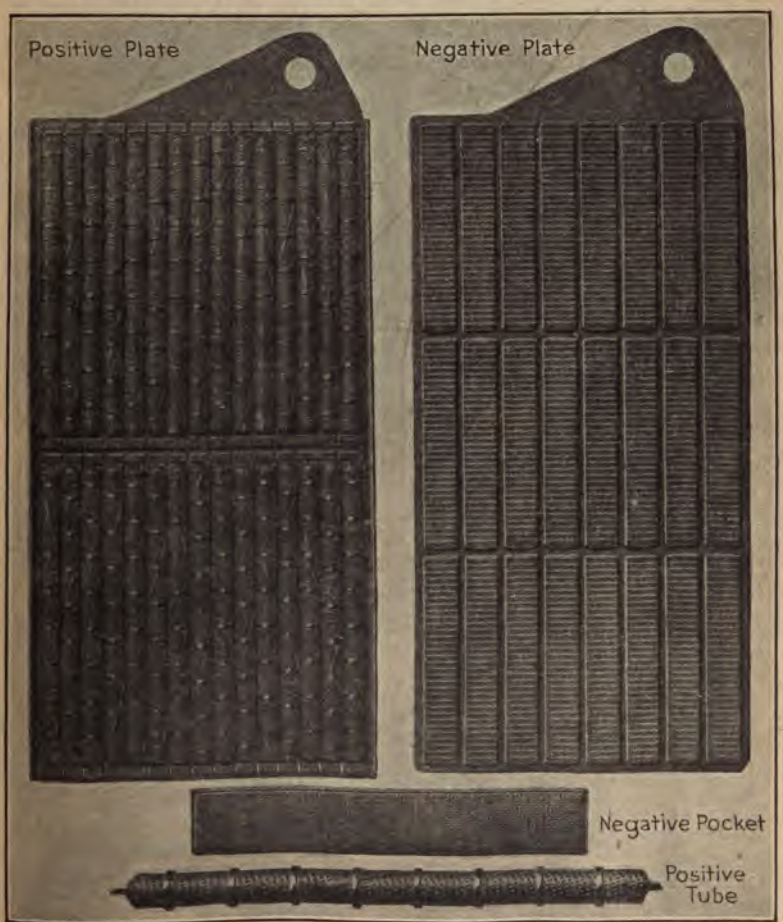


Fig. 19.—Positive and Negative Plates Used in the Edison Alkaline Battery.

a separator affords the opportunity for 'treeing' across from negative to positive. That is, a foliage-like formation develops on the negative and extends through any available opening until it reaches the positive, and the short circuit thus produced not only dissipates the energy of the battery but to a greater or less degree cripples the battery. It also furthers the possibility of sulphation. The necessity for high capacity in starter batteries within little space demands that the plates shall be but a short distance apart. Thus, unless prevented by special provision, 'treeing' would occur across the bottoms of the separators. In assembling U. S. L. batteries pains are taken to make the separators of such length and to so fit them in place that their bottoms shall extend below the plates. Trouble has been experienced from distortion of the grids and the chiseling off of the separator bottoms by the sharp plate edges in their distorted condition. Buckled plates are saucer-shaped, so that the old-fashioned square-cornered plates did the most chiseling with their corners. To minimize the effects of buckling, even though it be the result of abuse, U. S. L. plates are round-cornered."

CHAPTER III

Storage Battery Defects—Loss of Battery Capacity—Sediment in Cells—Sulphation, Cause and Cure—Causes of Plate Deterioration—Cadmium Readings—Making Electrolyte—Features of Edison Cell—Tools and Supplies for Repairing—Taking Down Exide Batteries—Taking Down Gould Sealed Cells—Disassembling Willard Battery—Lead-Burning Apparatus—Lead-Burning Process—Battery Defects and Restoration Summarized.

Storage Battery Defects.—The subject of storage battery maintenance was thoroughly covered in a paper read by H. M. Beck before the S. A. E. and published in the transactions of the society. Some extracts from this are reproduced in connection with notes made by the writer and with excerpts from instruction books of battery manufacturers in order to enable the reader to secure a thorough grasp of this important subject without consulting a mass of literature. Endeavor has been made to simplify the technical points involved and to make the exposition as brief as possible without slighting any essential points. In view of the general adoption of motor starting and lighting systems on all modern automobiles, the repairman or motorist must pay more attention to the electrical apparatus than formerly needed when the simple magneto ignition system was the only electrical part of the automobile. The storage battery is one of the most important parts of the modern electrical systems, and all up-to-date repairmen and electricians must understand its maintenance and charging in order to care for cars of recent manufacture intelligently, as well as being able to understand the many industrial uses considered briefly in this volume.

In taking care of a storage battery, there are four points which are of the first importance:

First—The battery must be charged properly.

Second—The battery must not be overdischarged.

Third—Short circuits between the plates, or from sedimer under them, must be prevented.

Fourth—The plates must be kept covered with electrolyte, ar only water of the proper purity used for replacing evaporation.

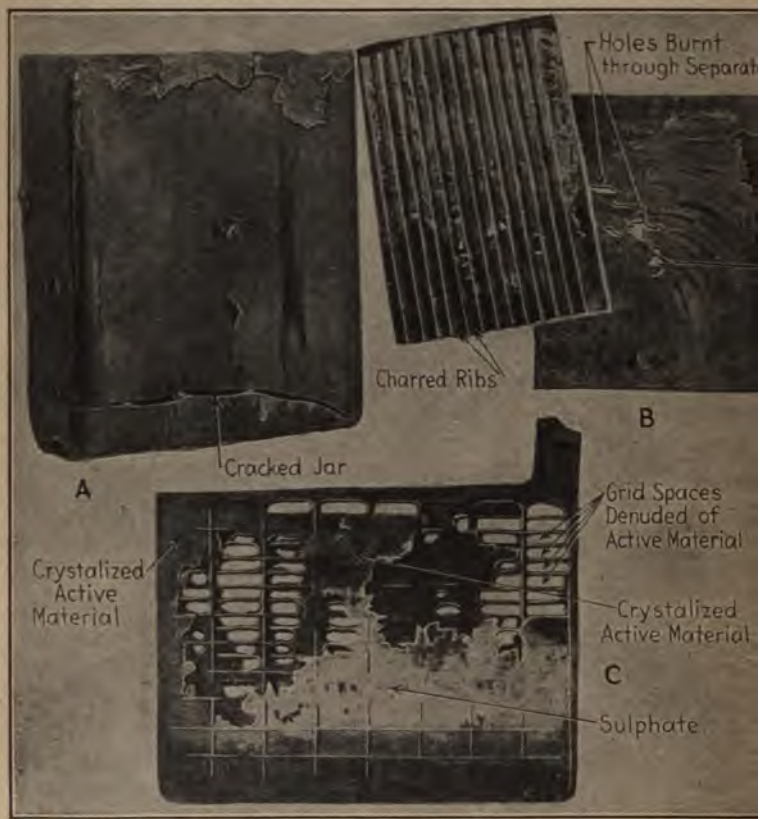


Fig. 20.—Defective Parts of Automobile Lighting Battery Abused Service. A—Cracked Hard Rubber Cell Jar. B—Burnt Woo Separator. C—Badly Damaged Plate.

In the event of electrical trouble which may be ascribed *weak* source of current, first test the battery, using a low-readir *voltmeter. Small* pocket voltmeters can be purchased for a fe

dollars and will be found a great convenience. Cells may be tested individually and as a battery. The proper time to take a reading of a storage battery is immediately upon stopping or while the engine is running. A more definite determination can be made than after the battery has been idle for a few hours and has recuperated more or less. A single cell should register more than two volts when fully charged, and the approximate energy of a three-cell battery should be about 6.5 volts.

If the voltage is below this the batteries should be recharged and the specific gravity of the electrolyte brought up to the required point. If the liquid is very low in the cell new electrolyte should be added. To make this fluid add about one part of chemically pure sulphuric acid to about four parts of distilled water, and add more water or acid to obtain the required specific gravity, which is determined by a hydrometer. According to some authorities the hydrometer test should show the specific gravity of the electrolyte as about 1.208 or 25 degrees Baumé when first prepared for introduction in the cell, and about 1.306 or 34 degrees Baumé when the cell is charged.

The following table gives the corresponding specific gravities and Baumé degrees:

Baumé	Specific Gravity	Baumé	Specific Gravity
0	1.000	18	1.141
1	1.006	19	1.150
2	1.014	20	1.160
3	1.021	21	1.169
4	1.028	22	1.178
5	1.035	23	1.118
6	1.043	24	1.198
7	1.050	25	1.208
8	1.058	26	1.218
9	1.066	27	1.228
10	1.074	28	1.239
11	1.082	29	1.250
12	1.090	30	1.260
13	1.098	31	1.271
14	1.106	32	1.283
15	1.115	33	1.294
16	1.124	34	1.306
17	1.132	35	1.318

The appended conversion formula and table of equivalents will be found of value in changing the reading of a hydrometer, or

acidometer, from terms of specific gravity to the Baumé scale or vice versa.

$$\text{Sp. Gr.} = \frac{145}{145 - \text{Baumé degrees}} \text{ at } 60° \text{ F.}$$

Either voltage or gravity readings alone could be used, but as both have advantages in certain cases, and disadvantages in others, it is advisable to use each for the purpose for which it is best fitted, the one serving as a check on the other. Voltage has the great disadvantage in that it is dependent upon the rate of current flowing. Open-circuit readings are of no value, as a cell reads almost the same discharged as it does charged.

Loss of Battery Capacity.—When a battery gives indication of lessened capacity it should be taken apart and the trouble located. If the cell is full of electrolyte it may be of too low specific gravity. The plates may be sulphated, due to lack of proper charge or too long discharge. The cells may need cleaning, a condition indicated by short capacity and a tendency to overheat when charging. Sometimes a deposit of sediment on the bottom of the cell will short circuit the plates. If the specific gravity is low and the plates have a whitish appearance, there being little sediment in the cells, it is safe to assume that the plates are sulphated. Sediment should be removed from the cells and the plates rinsed in rain or distilled water to remove particles of dirt or other adhering matter.

Sediment in Cells.—The rate at which the sediment collects depends largely upon the way a battery is handled, and it is therefore necessary to determine this rate for each individual case. A cell should be cut out after, say, fifty charges, the depth of sediment measured and the rate so obtained used to determine the time when the battery will need cleaning. As there is apt to be some variation in the amount of sediment in different cells, and as the sediment is thrown down more rapidly during the latter part of a period than at the beginning, it is always advisable to allow at least one-fourth inch clearance. If the ribs in the bottom of the jars are 1¾ inches high, figure on cleaning when the sediment reaches a depth of 1½ inches. Before dismantling a battery

for "washing," if practical, have it fully charged. Otherwise, if the plates are badly sulphated, they are likely to throw down considerable sediment on the charge after the cleaning is completed.

There have been many complaints of lack of capacity from batteries after washing. Almost without exception this is found to be due to lack of a complete charge following the cleaning. The plates are frequently in a sulphated condition when dismantled, and in any case are exposed to the air during the cleaning process, and thus lose more or less of their charge. When reassembled, they consequently need a very complete charge, and in some cases the equivalent of the initial charge, and unless this charge is given the cells will not show capacity and will soon give trouble again. This charge should be as complete as that described elsewhere in connection with the initial charge.

Dangers of Flushing.—"Flushing," or replacing evaporation in cells with electrolyte instead of water, is a most common mistake. The plates of a storage battery must always be kept covered with electrolyte, but the evaporation must be replaced with pure water only. There seems to be a more or less general tendency to confuse the electrolyte of a storage battery with that of a primary cell. The latter becomes weakened as the cell discharges and eventually requires renewal. With the storage battery, however, this is not the case, at least to anything like the same degree, and unless acid is actually lost through slopping or a broken jar it should not be necessary to add anything but water to the cells between cleanings. Acid goes into the plates during discharge, but with proper charging it will all be driven out again, so that there will be practically no loss in the specific gravity readings, or at least one so slight that it does not require adjustment between cleanings. Thus, unless some of the electrolyte has actually been lost, if the specific gravity readings are low, it is an indication that something is wrong; but the trouble is not that the readings are low, but that something is causing them to be low, and the proper thing to do is to remove the cause and not try to cover it up by doctoring the indicator. The acid is in the cells, and if it does not show in the readings it must be in the form

of sulphate, and the proper thing to do is to remove the cause of the sulphation if there is one, and then, with proper charging, drive the acid out of the plates and the specific gravity readings will then come back to the proper point. The too-frequent practice in such cases is to add electrolyte to the cells in order to bring up the readings which, as already explained, are only the indication of the trouble, and this further aggravates the condition, until finally the plates become so sulphated that lack of capacity causes a complaint. This practice of adding electrolyte to cells instead of water seems to be becoming more and more common.

Sulphation, Cause and Cure.—When plates are sulphated, to restore them to their original condition it is necessary that the battery be given a long, slow charge at about a quarter or a third of the normal charging rate. This should be continued until the electrolyte has reached the proper specific gravity and the voltage has attained its maximum.

It should be understood that sulphating is a normal as well as an abnormal process in the charge and discharge of storage batteries, and the difference is in the degree, not the process. The abnormal condition is that ordinarily referred to by the term. In normal service sulphating does not reach the point where it is difficult to reduce, but if carried too far, the condition becomes so complete that it is difficult to reduce and injury results. A very crude method of illustrating the different degrees of sulphating is to consider it as beginning in individual particles uniformly distributed throughout the active material. Each particle of sulphate is then entirely surrounded by active material. The sulphate itself is a non-conductor, but, being surrounded by active material, the current can reach it from all sides and it is easily reduced. This is normal sulphate. As the action goes further the particles of sulphate become larger and join together and their outside conducting surface is greatly reduced in comparison with their volume, so that it becomes increasingly difficult to reduce them, and we have abnormal sulphate.

Slow Charge Cures Sulphation.—The general cure for sulphating is charging, so that a cell, having been mechanically restored, the electrical restoration consists simply in the proper charging.

Sulphate reduces slowly, and on this account it is a good plan to use a rather low current rate. High rates cause excessive gassing, heating, and do not hasten the process appreciably, so that it is the safer as well as the more efficient plan to go slowly. A good rate is about one-fifth normal. The length of charge will depend upon the degree of sulphating. In one actual case it required three months' charging night and day to complete the operation, but this was, of course, an exceptional one. The aim should be to continue until careful voltage and gravity readings show no further increase for at least ten hours and an absolute maximum has been reached. In serious cases it may be advisable to even exceed this time in order to make absolutely sure that all sulphate is reduced, and where there is any question it is much safer to charge too long rather than to risk cutting off too soon. A partial charge is only a temporary expedient; the cell, still being sulphated, will drop behind again.

The Gould Storage Battery Company give a number of characteristics by which cells in poor condition may be recognized in addition to the usual hydrometer readings. The common causes of plate deterioration are also given. The plates may be of poor color; the color of a wet positive plate in good condition varies from a rich dark brown (almost black) if the plate is fully charged to a reddish, fairly dark brown if discharged. A light grayish coating on the positive plates is not a bad indication, if by rubbing with a clean stick or piece of hard rubber a good color is evident immediately under the surface. The color is much lighter for dried plates. The wet negatives are of a light slate gray if charged and somewhat darker if discharged. When dry they are considerably lighter, and may even be somewhat yellowish if allowed to heat in drying. If the color of the plates is not as described they are probably considerably sulphated. If the cell voltage is markedly lower on discharge or higher on charge than it should be, sulphating is also indicated. If the acid strength is low, the cell should be investigated for short circuits or sulphated plates. Always be sure that the sediment does not touch the plates. It must be removed as soon as there is danger of this occurring.

Causes of Plate Deterioration.—Plates may get in poor condition from the following causes: 1st, Impure Electrolyte.—Either a poor quality used at the start, or through the use of impure water or through foreign substances getting into the cells. The remedy in this case, if the plates are physically in fair condition, is to replace the old electrolyte with new, the cells being in a discharged condition, and then thoroughly charge the battery. 2nd, Short Circuits.—These are not frequent if the sediment is removed before it touches the plates, as the wash of the electrolyte in most vehicle batteries resulting from the movement of the car would tend to free them. If they do occur, the cell should be completely dismantled, the plates straightened and the cell assembled again, the separators being completely replaced. The cell should then be thoroughly charged. 3rd, High Temperature.—At temperatures above 100° F. corrosion is quite rapid, and this limit must not be exceeded. If possible, the temperature should not exceed 90° F. The positives may be sulphated considerably from this cause and the plates grown abnormally and distorted. If they are thoroughly corroded they must be replaced; if not, they should be straightened and thoroughly charged. The conditions should be changed so that the battery will not again be subjected to the high temperature. 4th, Standing Discharged.—The positive plates especially may be badly sulphated from this cause. The indication of this condition is a light color of the positive plates, possibly with blotches of a grayish color. The remedy in this case is also complete charge, though care must be taken that too much active material is not thrown off during the charge. Under these conditions the active material is granular and non-cohesive, so care is needed in charging and discharging to restore the plates to efficiency.

Value of Cadmium Readings.—It is possible to make tests to determine the relative capacity of the positive and negative plates of any cell by means of a neutral electrode. Cadmium is well adapted for this purpose, and while such tests are not ordinarily made with small batteries they are very useful in determining the condition of large cells. The cadmium element consists of a ick of that material about the size of a lead pencil and 6 inches

long, which is inserted into a soft rubber tube. Before inserting the cadmium stick, the rubber tube should be perforated with a number of holes about 1/16 of an inch in diameter. The rubber tube should extend at least ⅛ of an inch beyond one end of the cadmium element. A small flexible rubber-covered copper wire should be soldered to one end of the cadmium stick. This wire may be joined to the negative pole of a voltmeter. A regu-

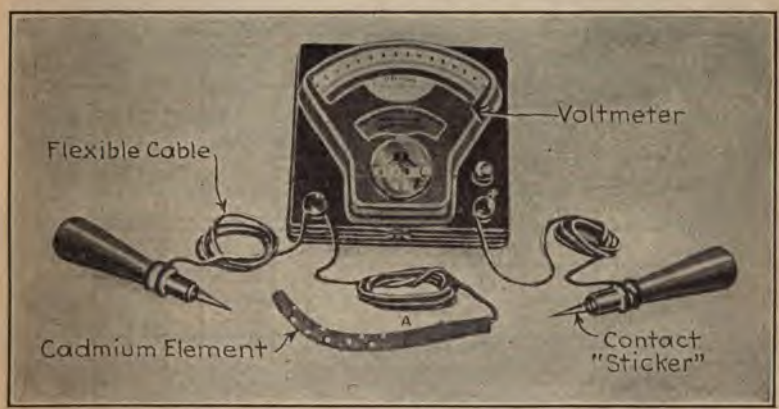


Fig. 21.—Apparatus Used in Making Cadmium Tests.

lar contact "sticker," or "stabber," such as shown at Fig. 21, is connected to the positive pole of the voltmeter.

After the total cell voltage throughout the battery is taken in the regular way, cadmium readings can be taken by inserting the rubber-covered end of the cadmium into the acid of the first cell, being sure that the bare cadmium stick does not touch either of the plate groups. Press the "sticker" leading to the positive pole of the voltmeter against the positive cross bar of the cell and note the reading. The difference between the reading of the positive group and the cadmium and the total cell voltage already taken will represent approximately the negative cadmium reading. For example, if the positive cadmium reading is two volts and the regular cell voltage 1.85, the negative cadmium would be 0.15. A positive is discharged when its cadmium reading at its

regular catalog discharge rate is about 1.95, and the negative when the cadmium reading is approximately 0.25 volt. At these values the cell voltage would be 1.7.

As a cell discharges the positive cadmium reading decreases, while the negative cadmium reading will increase. The curve shown in Fig. 22 illustrates the discharge of a cell in which the positive plates are low in capacity. Note the rapid drop in cell and positive cadmium voltage after three hours but the slow rise

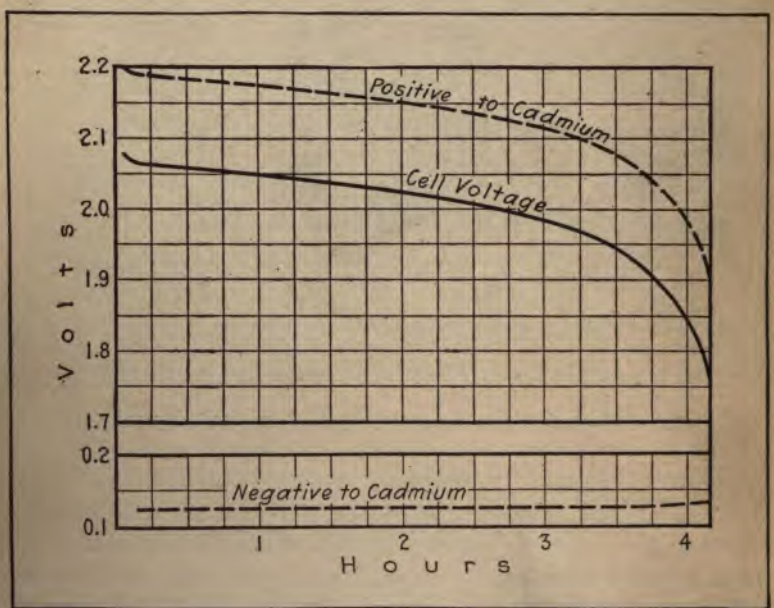


Fig. 22.—Curves Illustrating the Discharge of a Cell During a Cadmium Test in Which the Positive Plates are Low in Capacity.

in the negative cadmium voltage. All voltage readings must be taken while the battery is discharging at its catalog discharge The readings should be carefully filed and compared with 's tests. In this way any cell not in condition will be ound.

Electrolyte.—Electrolyte, as used in all lead plate ies, consists of a mixture of pure sulphuric acid nd

istilled or other pure waters. Concentrated sulphuric acid is a eavy, oily liquid, having a specific gravity of about 1.835. A attery will not operate if the acid is too strong, and it is thereore diluted with sufficient pure water to bring it to a gravity of .270 to 1.300 for a fully charged battery. Stronger electrolyte han this is injurious. To prepare electrolyte from sulphuric acid f 1.835 specific gravity, mix with water in the proportions indiated in Fig. 23 for the desired specific gravity, taking the fol- owing precautions:

Use a glass or earthenware vessel, never metallic.

Carefully pour the acid into the water, never water into acid.

Stir thoroughly with wooden paddle and allow to cool before eading the gravity.

Both the water and the sulphuric acid used in making elecrolyte should be chemically pure to a certain standard. This is he same standard of purity as is usually sold in drug stores as CP" (chemically pure), or by the chemical manufacturers as battery acid."

Electrolyte made from sulphuric acid meeting the following pecifications will be satisfactory:

Sulphuric acid to be high grade, either the so-called "Brimtone Oil of Vitriol" or "Contact Process Acid" made from sulhur of good quality. Must be water white in color and show no ediment on standing.

By analysis, impurities must not exceed the following:

Platinum	None
Arsenic	Trace
Manganese	Trace
Iron	0.005%
Chloride	0.001%
Nitrogen in any form	0.01 %
Copper	0.002%
Sulphurous acid	None
Organic matter	None

Must be free from all substances other than stated above.

As great care is exercised in the manufacture of storage batery plates and in the furnishing of acid to secure a high degree f purity, obviously attention should be paid to the purity of the ater used both in the dilution of concentrated acid, if this is

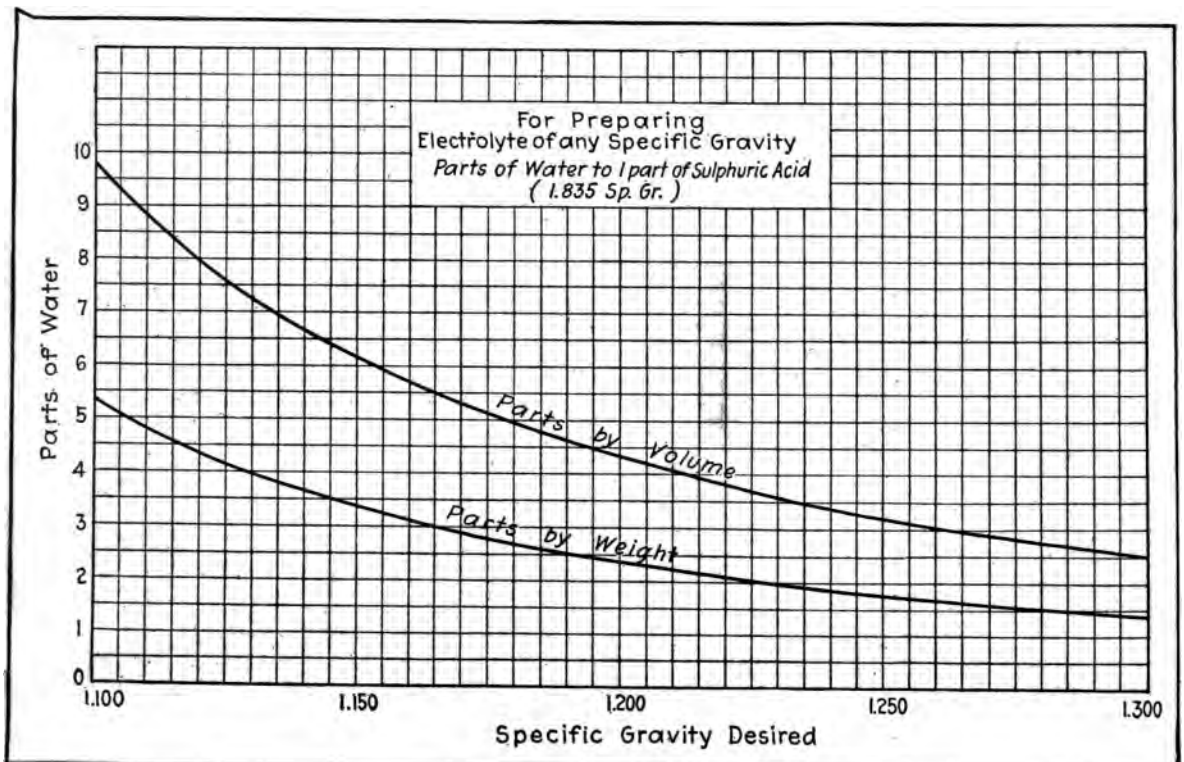


Fig. 23.—Chart for Preparing Electrolyte of Any Specific Gravity.

attempted, and replacing the loss in cells occasioned by evaporation and overcharge. The frequent addition of water required to replace evaporation leads eventually to a concentration of any impurities which it may contain. As ordinary water supplies are not pure, their use is always questionable. Water from natural sources should be used only with the approval of competent chemists. Rain water should not be used if distilled water is available, as it often contains traces of nitric acid and ammonia, either of which is harmful to storage batteries. Distilled water is preferable and should always be used unless otherwise advised by the chemists. The water should be stored in carboys or thoroughly cleaned whiskey barrels. Water obtained by condensing the exhaust from engines and which may thus contain cylinder oil and other impurities should never be used for battery purposes. In cleaning batteries the ordinary tap water may be used provided it does not contain a great quantity of impurities.

In this connection, the expression "chemically pure" acid is often confused with acid of "full strength." Acid may be of full strength (approximately 1.835 sp. gr.) and at the same time chemically pure. If this chemically pure acid of full strength be mixed with chemically pure water, the mixture would still be chemically pure, but not of full strength. On the other hand, if a small quantity of some impurity be introduced into chemically pure acid, it would not materially reduce the strength, but would make it impure. The usual method of determining the strength of electrolyte is by taking its specific gravity. The method is possible on account of the fact that sulphuric acid is heavier than water. Therefore the greater the proportion of acid contained in the electrolyte the heavier the solution or the higher its specific gravity. By specific gravity is meant the relative weight of any substance compared with water as a basis. Pure water, therefore, is considered to have a specific gravity of 1, usually written 1.000 and spoken of as "ten hundred." One pound of water is approximately one pint. An equal volume of concentrated sulphuric acid (oil of vitriol) weighs 1.835 pounds. It therefore has a specific gravity of 1.835 and is spoken of as "eighteen thirty-five."

Since electrolyte, like most substances, expands when heated, its specific gravity is affected by a change in temperature. For the convenience of the operator, the following table is given to show the variation in the electrolyte specific gravity at various temperatures likely to be met with in service:

Degree Fahrenheit	Specific Gravity
106	1.208
97	1.211
88	1.214
79	1.217
70 normal	1.220 normal
61	1.223
52	1.226
43	1.229
34	1.232
25	1.235
16	1.238
7	1.241

The solution must be allowed to stand several hours to cool. Never add hot or even warm electrolyte to a cell, as the plates are liable to be dangerously sulphated thereby. The strength of the resultant solution should always be checked by hydrometer readings reducing the latter to 70 degrees Fahr.

Features of the Edison Cell.—The instructions given apply only to batteries of the lead plate type and not to the Edison battery, which is entirely different in construction. The Edison cell uses an electrolyte consisting of 21% solution of potash in distilled water so that the electrolyte is alkaline instead of acidulous. For 6-volt ignition and lighting service it is necessary to use 5 cells owing to the lesser voltage of the Edison batteries. The average voltage during discharge is but 1.2 volts per cell, and is not as constant as is the case with a lead battery, the voltage of which may be as high as 2.5 volts per cell.

An Edison 6.5-volt battery used for lighting or ignition may be charged completely in ten hours. A feature of the Edison battery is that overcharging at the normal rate has no harmful effects, and it is advised by the maker to give the battery a 12-hour charge once every 60 days or when the electrolyte is replenished. The electrolyte must be kept sufficiently high so as to

cover the plates, and any loss by evaporation must be compensated for by the addition of distilled water. Another feature in which the Edison battery is superior to the lead plate type is that the plates will not be injured if the cells are allowed to stand

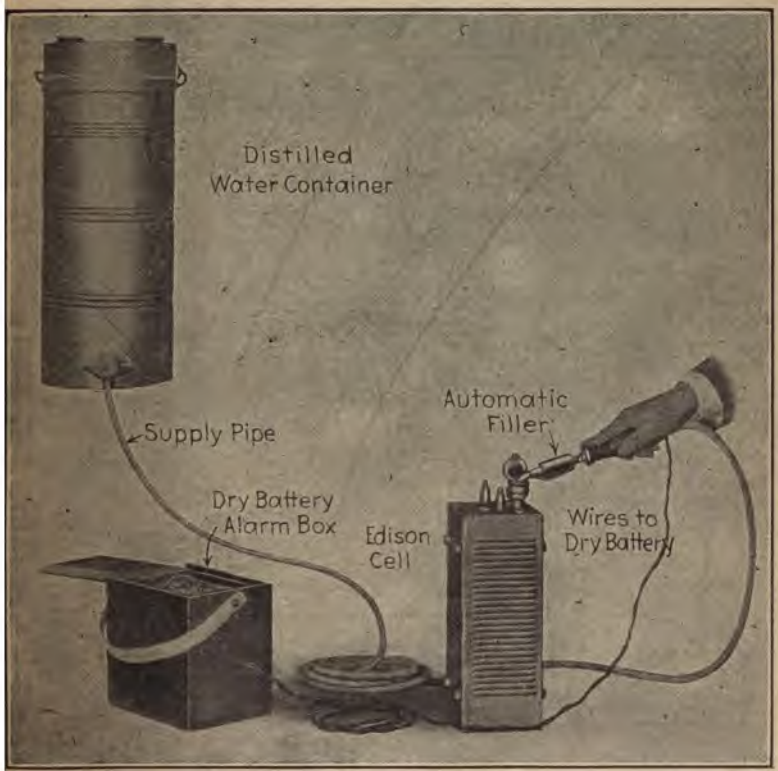


Fig. 24.—Automatic Filler for Renewing Water Supply in Edison Alkaline Cell.

in a discharged condition. The external portions of the cells must be kept clean and dry, because the container or can is made of a conducting material. The vent caps must be kept closed except when replacing electrolyte or bringing the level up to the proper height by adding distilled water. Care should be taken

to avoid short circuiting of the battery by tools or metal objects, and special emphasis is laid on the precaution that no acid or electrolyte containing acid be poured into the cells. It is said that the Edison battery has a longer life than the lead plate type of equal capacity.

Repairing Exide Sealed-Type Batteries.—The smaller Exide

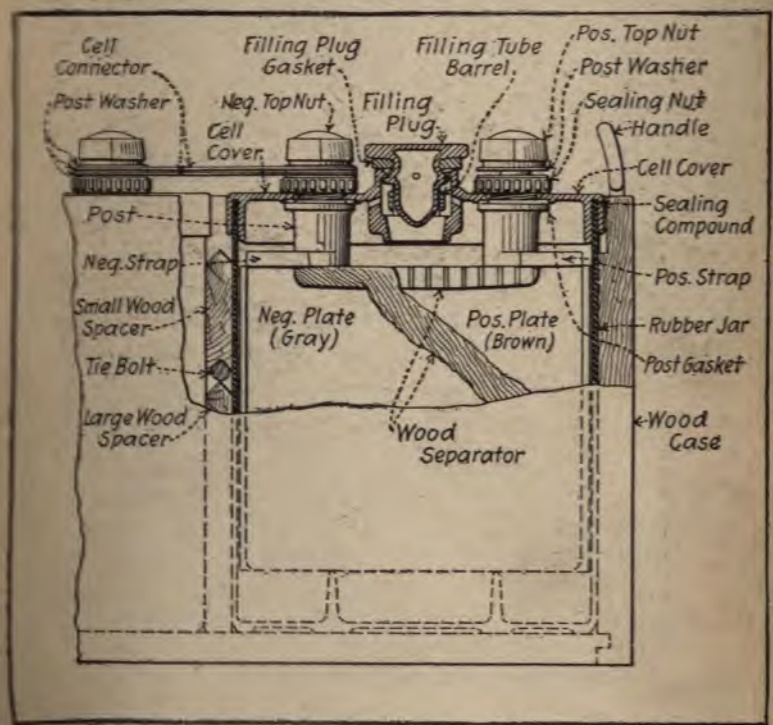


Fig. 25.—Exide Double Seal Bolted Connector Type Battery.

ich as used in electric vehicles and for automobile start- iting and ignition systems, are made in two types. In one e flange cover is depended on to keep the electrolyte from g out, this construction being shown in the sectional view 25. In the other a single-flange cover, as outlined at is utilized in connection with sealing compound. The

double-flange cover has two downwardly projecting flanges, one fitting inside and the other outside of the cell jar. The two flanges form a channel or slot, holding the jar walls. In order to insure a tight joint a small amount of sealing compound is placed at the bottom of the slot and between the cell cover and the top of the rubber jar.

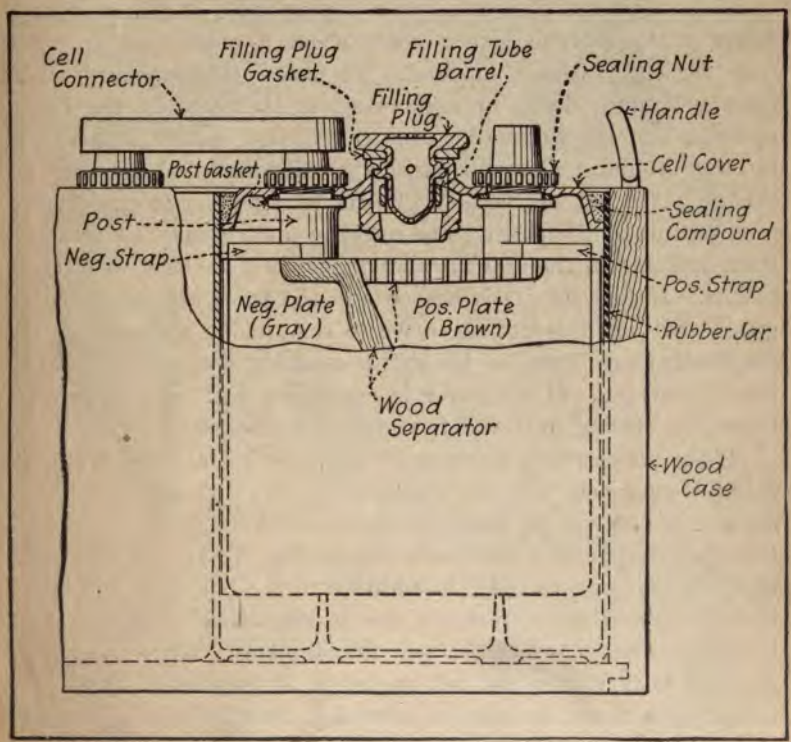


Fig. 26.—Exide Single Seal Burned Connector Type Battery.

To unseal this type of battery two stout boards about one-quarter of an inch longer than the height of the jar are needed. Rest the side flanges of the jar on these, as shown at Fig. 27 A, so the cell will be raised and the weight supported by the wood blocks. Next warm the cover around the edges so that the sealing compound will soften. Of course, the terminal straps and

sealing nuts have been removed. As soon as the compound has softened, a little pressure with the thumbs on the terminal posts will cause the jar to drop out of the cover. The warming may be accomplished by passing a moderate flame quickly around the cover, taking care not to hold it at any one spot long enough to burn the rubber.

With the single-flange type the sloping sides of the cover and flange at the bottom give a space about a quarter of an inch wide for the sealing compound. To unseal this type of seal a flat-bladed putty knife or a screw-driver is heated in the flame and run through the sealing compound close to the jar wall all the way around. This will loosen the compound and the element can be lifted out of the jar. When taking the elements apart, i. e., separating the positive and negative plate groups, never allow them to stand in the air, but always put them in some weak electrolyte. If the cell jar is broken and the parts are in otherwise good condition it is not necessary to remove the sealing nuts on the single-flange type, as the entire assembly may be lifted back into a new jar. If the cover is cracked it will be necessary to loosen the sealing nuts and to supply a new cover.

If the plates are found to be buckled, the operation of straightening is relatively simple. Spacing boards of suitable thickness are placed between the plates, also outside of the plate group, and the whole is put in a vise, as shown at Fig. 27 B, and subjected to a gradual pressure. If, in addition to the buckling, the negatives have shed active material due to starvation or other abuse, it will be necessary to use a new set of plates. When the active material is very hard and not spongy it is "sulphated," and particular care should be taken in charging, after the cell is reassembled, to make sure that the electrolyte is brought to its maximum gravity.

It is well to examine the wood separators to see that the ribs are not worn off and that there are no splits or other perforations to reduce the mechanical strength or destroy its utility as a separator. The method of removing and inserting separators is clearly lined at Fig. 27 C. It is always necessary to clean out cell thoroughly after the elements have been removed in order

to clear out all sediment and fallen active material. In inserting separators it is well to note that the flat side of the wood goes against the negative plate and the rib side against the positive plate. Where perforated rubber sheets are used in addition to

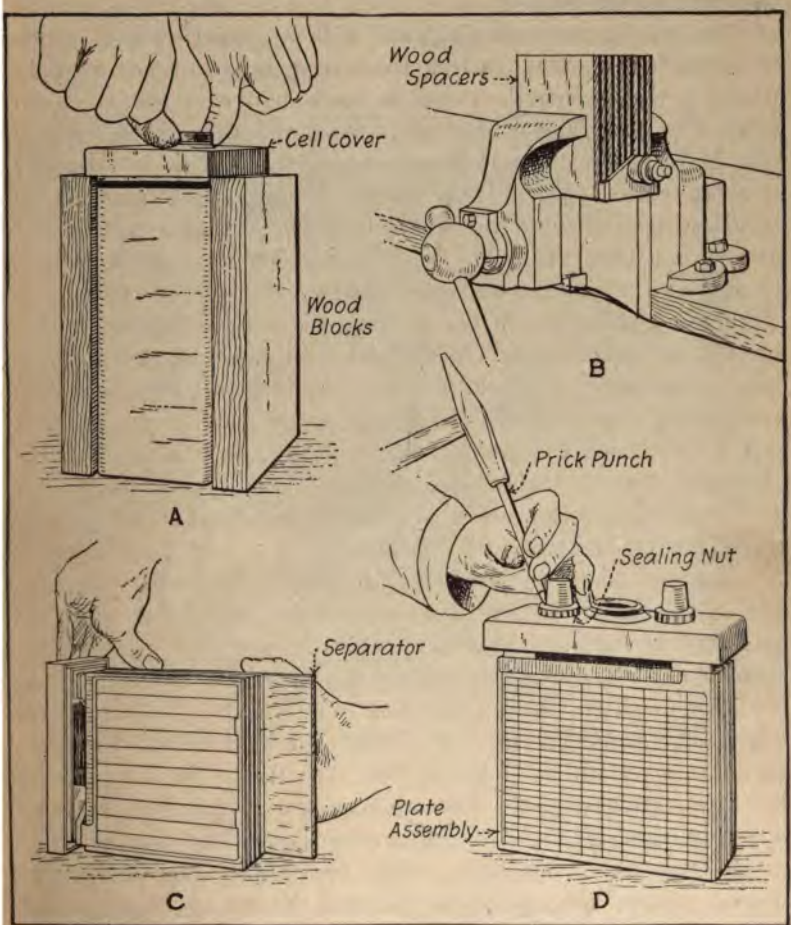


Fig. 27.—Some Operations When Repairing Exide Battery. A—Removing Double Seal Cover. B—Straightening Buckled Plates. C—How to Remove Wood Separators. D—Method of Locking Sealing Nuts on Burned Connector Type Cells.

the wood separators, these are always placed against the grooved side, one to each wood separator, and the two inserted between the plates together. When the separators are all in place the edges should be tapped with a wood block until they project equally on each side of the plates.

The sealing nuts are tightened with a special wrench, which is shown in Fig. 28. To lock the sealing nuts in place a prick-punch is used to burr the thread in spots above each nut, as shown at D, Fig. 27. This will slightly upset the alloy thread on the post and prevent the nut from coming loose. This is necessary only on those types of cells having burned connections, as in bolted connections the thread of the nut post does not extend above the sealing nut. The top, or clamping nut, acts as a lock to prevent the sealing nut from loosening.

Before sealing a cell, always wipe the surfaces against which the sealing compound is to be placed with ammonia and allow it to dry thoroughly. Otherwise the compound will not stick. In the double-flange type a string of sealing compound about 3/16ths inch in diameter is made by rolling some special compound between two boards. This is packed in the space between the flanges and is heated before the cell cover is pushed in place.

While it is not difficult to release those types of cells having bolted-on connecting strips, the burned-on type connectors cannot be removed as easily. To remove these solid lead links it is necessary to bore the connectors centrally over each post with a ⅝-inch wood bit. Another method is to play a burning flame on the joint to soften the lead and then to pull off the connector with a pair of pliers. The method of taking down the bolted connection is clearly outlined at Fig. 28. The first step is to remove the filling plugs to provide more room for working on the battery terminals. A special socket wrench is provided for the alloy-covered top nuts, this being easily turned by a special ratchet wrench. After the top nut is removed the spacing washers and connector strips may be taken off, and it is well to take off the connector strips without bending them. It is also well to save the alloy washers. These are placed one above, one between and below the two connector straps. Two types of connector strips

are provided, a simple form consisting of a straight piece, and a later type, in which the lead-covered copper connectors are provided with cast lead ends that eliminate the spacing washers.

Do not try to unscrew the sealing nuts with a Stilson wrench. The wrench teeth will not only damage the sealing-nut corrugations, but the pressure may squeeze a nut so tightly into the threads that it can be removed only with difficulty. The special

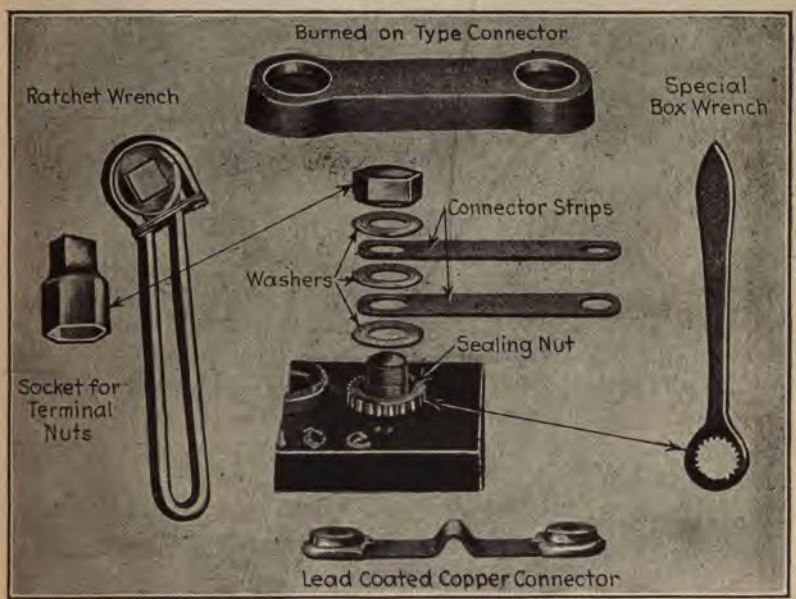


Fig. 28.—Tools Used and Method of Disassembling Bolted Type Exide Connectors.

box wrench illustrated is necessary for removing the sealing nuts without damage. This has a series of small projections which fit into the corresponding spaces on the sealing nut and make it very easy to turn that member. Whenever a bolted connection-type cell is assembled, the first step is to grease the studs well with vaseline. Slip one of the connector links over the posts of adjoining cells, then an alloy washer over each post, followed by a second connector and a second washer. The last washer is then

put in place and the top nut pulled up tight with a properly fitting socket wrench. If a monkey wrench or worn S-wrench is used the soft corners of the alloy-covered nut are apt to be marred if the wrench slips.

Battery Repair Tools.—The following list of tools and apparatus is given in the Gould Instruction Book, and will be found of value in repairing storage batteries of any make: One pair of rubber gloves, to protect the hands from acid; one 7-inch end-cutting nippers or one pair bolt cutters, for cutting connectors, plate lugs, etc.; two pairs of combination pliers, for pulling elements from jars; one triangular lead scraper, for cleaning plate lugs, terminals, etc.; one putty knife, for removing sealing compound; one half-inch wide wood chisel, for the same purpose; one five-inch screw-driver, for removing sealing compound and covers; one single-end wrench for removing terminal nuts; several coarse files and handles, for filing plate lugs, straps, etc.; one steel wire brush for cleaning files and battery terminals; one ball pein hammer, medium size, for general work; one 10-inch ratchet bit brace, for drilling links loose from pillar posts; one 5/8-inch diameter bit-stock drill, for removing 5/8-inch connectors; one 7/8-inch bit-stock drill, for removing 7/8-inch connectors; one small drill, to start holes; one center punch, for centering terminals to drill; one adjustable hacksaw frame and three 8-inch blades to fit it; one iron ladle, for pouring sealing compound; one pair blue glasses, for use when lead burning; one soft-rubber bulb syringe, for flushing and equalizing electrolyte; one burning-rack, with extra guide plates; one hydrometer, for mixing electrolyte; one thermometer, for reading cell and electrolyte temperature, and one lead-burning outfit. A group of the tools recommended by the Electric Storage Battery Company for work on the Exide batteries is shown at Fig. 29. The special terminal and box wrenches shown will fit the Exide battery terminals only.

To Repair Gould Batteries of the Sealed Types.—Batteries to be repaired may have been in service but a short time, the neces-
- for repairs being broken terminals, leaky jar, plates in one
  ort circuited, etc. Under these circumstances it is only

Fig. 29.—Tools and Apparatus Recommended by the Electric Storage Battery Company to Assist in Maintenance and Repair of Exide Batteries.

necessary to make the repairs indicated by test. If, however, the battery has been in service for six months or longer, and the cell or cells to be repaired show general deterioration, it is very probable that the other cells in the battery are in nearly as bad condition, and the elements should be removed from all of the jars in the battery. If, upon inspection, plates are still in good condition, the wood separators should be discarded and new wood separators put in the good cells as well as those requiring repairs.

To Dismantle a Cell: Have battery fully charged before dismantling a cell.

Remove vent cap and washer.

To remove terminal or connecting link, center the tops of terminals and connectors over the terminal posts with a center-punch and drill down to depth of ¾ inch, using a ⅝-inch drill if you have ¾-inch posts and a ⅞-inch drill if you have 1-inch posts. Terminals or links can then be removed by working back and forth gently with gas pliers.

To remove top cover. Soften the sealing compound by a jet of steam or a gas flame. The use of the flame requires very careful manipulation and continual attention of the operator. Care must be taken that the flame does not burn or scorch the edges of the cover. Then gently pry the cover from the jar.

With a heated putty knife or screw-driver, clean the compound from the inside edges of the rubber jar. The element can now be removed (with the lower cover) by grasping each terminal post firmly with gas pliers and pulling up slowly but strongly, holding the battery down meanwhile.

If separators are in good condition and a jar replacement only is to be made, set the element, with bottom cover, in electrolyte or water till ready to replace.

Remove the bottom cover from the element after cleaning compound away from the posts. The covers may have warped from [illegible] heat. If so they should be heated again by being placed in [illegible]ng water, straightened out and laid on a flat surface to cool. [illegible]arate the positive and negative groups and discard the [illegible]parators. If rubber sheets also are used, those that are [illegible]hould be washed and laid aside for future use. The

negative group should be washed and also laid aside until needed. The negative group should be immersed in water, otherwise it takes up oxygen from the air, which is liable to cause dangerous heating.

To remove a leaky jar, pour boiling water in the jar to soften the surrounding compound and lift the jar from the case. If the compound cannot be softened with boiling water, use a jet of steam or a flame on the inside of the jar. To install a new jar, pour boiling water in the jar. When it is thoroughly heated, press it carefully into place.

To Replace an Element: To assemble the new element: inter-

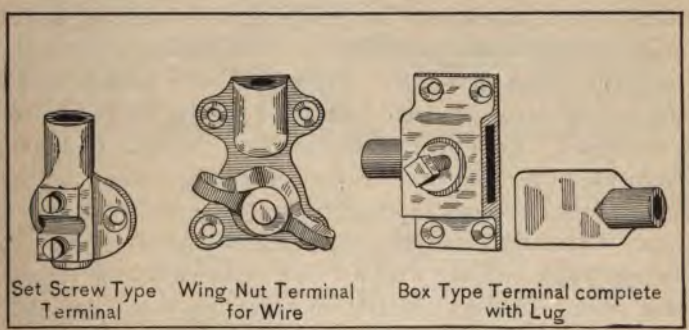


Fig. 30.—Terminal Types Used in Connection With Exide Vehicle Batteries.

mesh the positive and negative group, positive and negative plates alternating. As a negative group contains one more plate than does the positive, both outside plates will be negative. Lay the element on its side, and put the separator retainers in position. Insert the separators between each pair of plates. If wooden separators only are used, the grooved side of the separator should be next the positive plate. If wood separators and rubber sheets are used, they should be inserted together, the rubber sheet between the positive plate and the grooved side of the wood separator. See that the separators are against the retainers and that they extend equally on either side of the element.

Grasping the element by the pillar posts, lower gently into the

jar. Fill with electrolyte of the proper density (see "Electrolyte") and let the cell cool for at least twelve hours. Develop the plates. It is advisable to develop with the cover off on account of better ventilation and greater convenience in taking thermometer and hydrometer readings. Furthermore, if a fault develops it can be remedied without having to remove the cover. Proceed as follows: Burn a copper wire (about No. 10) to the top of each terminal post with a few drops of burning material, just enough to make good connection. Connect these wires to the charging source. Develop at a rate equal to six-tenths (.6), the final rate of the battery. The time required to develop at this rate will be about sixty hours. After the developing has gone on for thirty hours, disconnect the charging wires and reconnect so as to charge the balance of the cells in the battery as well as the cell or cells being developed. When the cell voltage and the specific gravity have remained unchanged for five hours, the cell is fully developed. Even up the electrolyte in the cells to 1.300.

Place the upper and lower covers in boiling water. When the lower cover has become thoroughly heated, press it gently into position. Carefully clean the inside edges of the jar and cover with warm water and dry with a flame. Otherwise, the compound will not stick. If there are any openings between cover and jar wide enough to allow the heated compound to run into the jar, work a small amount of compound around these edges, using a putty knife or brush before starting to pour. Pour melted sealing compound around the edge. Allow a few moments for this compound to harden slightly, then pour melted compound until it reaches a point slightly above the top of the expansion chamber, and at once press the heated top cover on the compound. Place a weight on the top cover and let it remain until the top cover cools fast to the compound. Pour melted compound around the edges and to the level of the top of the cover and smooth off with heated putty knife. Burn the connecting links and terminals to pillar posts.

Repairing Willard Automobile Type Batteries.—In repairing Willard storage battery a definite routine must be followed in breaking down and building up same in order that it will be in

the best condition when reassembled. These steps are as follows:

First: Remove all vent plugs and washers.

Second: Center punch both top connectors in each cell which is to be repaired; then drill ¾ inch into top connector with a

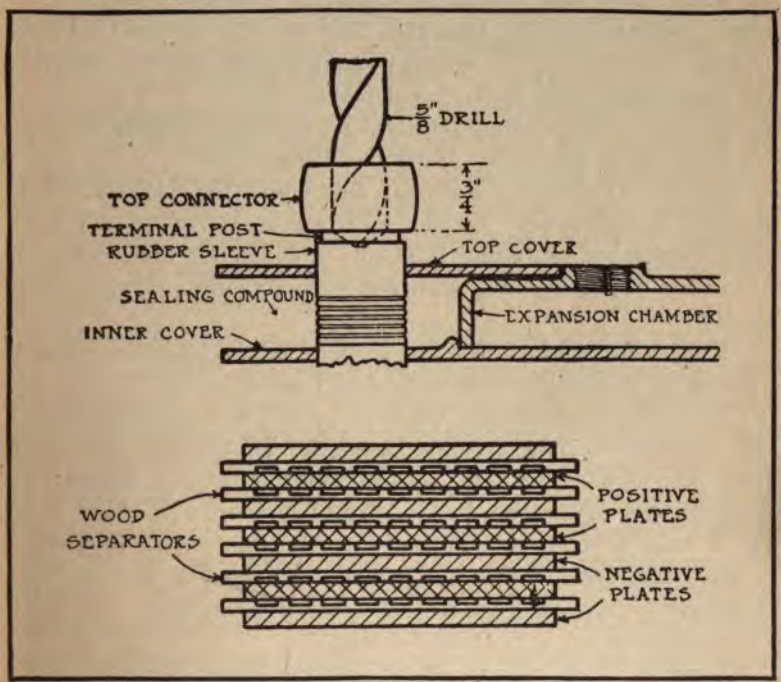


Fig. 31.—Diagram Showing Construction of Points to be Reached in Rebuilding or Tearing Down Willard Storage Battery.

⅝-inch diameter drill. Now pull off top connector with pair of pliers.

Third: Apply gas flame or blow-torch flame to the top of the battery long enough to soften the sealing compound under the top cover. Now, with heated putty knife, plow out the sealing compound around the edge of the top cover.

Fourth: Insert a putty knife, or any other thin, broad-pointed tool, heated in flame, along underside of top cover, separating it

from the sealing compound. Then, with putty knife, pry the top cover up the sides and off of the terminal posts.

Fifth: Then, with heated putty knife, remove all sealing compound from inner cover.

Sixth: Now play the flame onto the inner cover until it becomes soft and pliable; then take hold of both terminal posts of one cell and remove the elements from the jar slowly; then lift the inner cover from the terminal posts.

Seventh: Now separate positive and negative elements, by pulling them apart sideways. Destroy old separators.

Eighth: To remove a leaky jar, first empty the electrolyte from the jar, and then play the flame on the inside of the jar until the compound surrounding it is soft and plastic; then, with the aid of two pairs of pliers, remove it from the crate, slowly, lifting evenly.

Ninth: To put in a new jar, in place of the leaky one, heat it thoroughly in a pail of hot water and force it gently.

Tenth: In reassembling the battery, first assemble the positive and negative elements, pushing them together sideways, then turn them on the side, and with both hold-downs in place, insert new separators, being very careful to have the grooved side of the separators next to each side of the positive plate. Also be careful to have the separators extend beyond the plates on each side, so there will be no chance of the plates short circuiting. Now press all separartors up against hold-downs.

Eleventh: Heat up inner cover with the flame; then place same on terminal posts; then take hold of both terminal posts and slowly lower the elements into the jar.

Twelfth: Now, with expansion chamber in place on the inner cover, until it reaches the level of the hole in the top of the expansion chamber, i. e., so that when the top cover is replaced it will squeeze the sealing compound off the top of the expansion chambers.

Thirteenth: Now soften top cover with flame and replace on nal posts until it rests on top of expansion chamber; then weight on top cover until sealing compound cools.

enth: Now pour sealing compound around the edge of

the top cover until it reaches the top of top cover; then, when the sealing compound has cooled, take a putty knife and scoop extra sealing compound off of top cover, making a smooth surface over all the top of the battery.

Fifteenth: In burning the top connector to terminal post, proceed as follows: Scrape the hole of the top connector until the surface is bright and clean; scrape terminal post until top and edge of all surfaces are free of dirt. Now, scrape a piece of lead thoroughly, preferably a small bar; then apply hydrogen-gas flame, mixed with air under pressure, to the top connector and terminal post assembled, at the same time heating lead bar. When top connector and terminal post begin to melt, apply lead bar directly on same, melting it, thus making a firm burned connection. Then fill rest of hole-space with melted lead and smooth off even with top of top connector.

General Care of All Lead Batteries: The battery boxes must be kept clean and dry. The acid-proof paint of both the boxes and the tanks must be kept in good condition by repainting when necessary. The terminals must be kept thoroughly clean and covered by a coating of vaseline. Corroded copper, iron or any other foreign materials must not be allowed to get into the cells. If, through accident, this occurs, the acid in such cells must be thrown away and new electrolyte used. Matches or exposed flames of any kind must not come near the battery boxes, especially when the cells are charging. The gases thus given off are explosive when sufficiently concentrated. Temperatures higher than 100° F. are to be avoided, as the corrosion of the positive plates is accelerated. Low temperatures are not injurious, although they temporarily reduce the capacity of the battery.

Lead-Burning Outfits.—In all batteries having permanently jointed connections the various joints are produced by melting of a portion of the parts to be joined by a process termed "lead-burning," and forming a solid weld by means of heat to melt the lead, which may be produced with illuminating gas, hydrogen gas or the electric arc. The illuminating gas outfit is the simplest and can be used to advantage wherever that gas is available. It consists of a special-burning tip and a mixing valve. A supply

of compressed air is necessary, the pressure ranging from 5 to 10 pounds, and the various parts of the apparatus are joined together by 5/16-inch rubber hose, which is securely wired to the apparatus to insure tight connection. This is made necessary by the air pressure advised. The mixing valve is a very simple fitting, comprising of two shut-off cocks attached to a common outlet pipe. One of the cocks regulates the gas supply, the other controls the amount of air. Naturally, the mixed air and gas issue from the outlet pipe. The burner is a special form, which gives a very hot flame. When the flame is properly adjusted for burning it will have a greenish color. If there is too much gas, the flame will be yellow and be very ragged. If the flame is a blue color, gradually becoming less visible, too much air is provided, and as

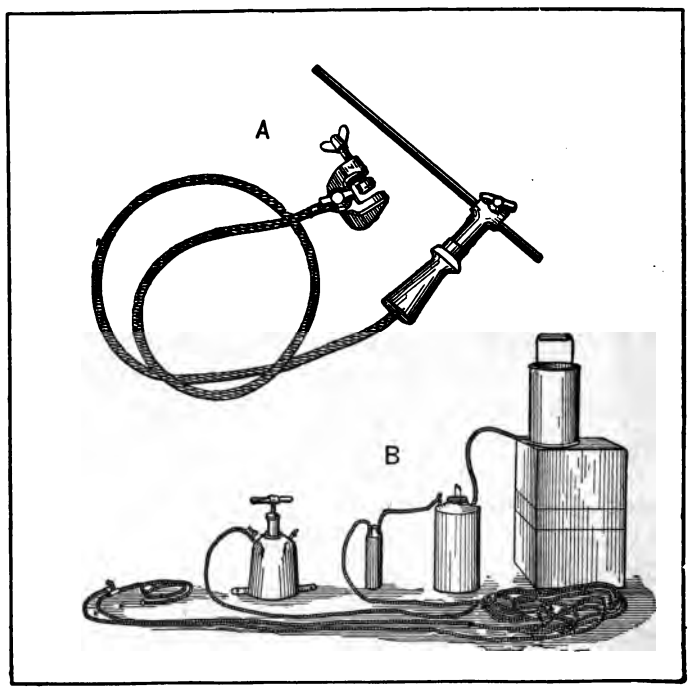


Fig. 32.—**Lead-Burning Outfits. A—Electric Arc Set. B—Hydrogen Gas Generator.**

a result it is lacking in heating power. The hottest part of a properly adjusted flame is just past the end of the inner point. Do not hold the flame too near the work, as the heating effect of the flame will be diminished if it is spread. If the air pressure is obtained from a tank holding a supply for blowing up automobile tires, for instance, a reducing valve must be introduced in the air line between the tank and the burner. The best method of producing the air pressure is by a small blower.

The apparatus needed for arc burning is shown at Fig. 32 A. The advantage of this method is that current from a six-volt battery may be used, not requiring the fitting of auxiliary apparatus. Although called an "arc-burning outfit," it is said that the best results are obtained by using the carbon as a soldering iron after it becomes heated without actually drawing an arc. The outfit is very simple, consisting of a carbon holder with cable, a clamp and a number of ¼-inch diameter carbons. The method of using it for reburning connectors is easily understood. The connector to be burned is connected to one terminal of the storage battery by a piece of cable, which can be made fast to the latter by means of a clamp. It is essential that the contact surfaces be scraped bright to secure a good electrical connection. The cable attached to the carbon holder is connected to the other battery terminal. If a battery is partially discharged the three cells will be needed, but if the battery is fully charged three cells may give too much voltage. The amount of current passing through should be sufficient to raise the temperature of the carbon to at least a bright cherry red while it is in contact with the joint. The carbon should be sharpened to a long point and should not project from the holder more than two or three inches. The holder should be cooled off occasionally by plunging it into a pail of water. After being used for a short time the carbon will not heat properly because of a scale film produced on the surface. This should be cleaned off till the bare carbon is exposed before proceeding with the work.

The hydrogen-gas outfit, such as shown at B, Fig. 32, while more expensive and troublesome than the illuminating gas burner, produces a much superior flame for lead burning, and is very gen-

erally used where a large amount of work is done. The hydrog outfit shown is supplied by the Electric Storage Battery Compa and consists of the following parts: One generator; one wa bottle; one air pump and tank combined; one branch pipe; finger pipe and set of tips; one 50-foot length 5/16-inch rub tubing; one two-foot length ¾-inch rubber tubing; two rub stoppers; one triangular scraper. The material for charging zinc, 15 pounds; water, 12 quarts; sulphuric acid, 2½ quarts

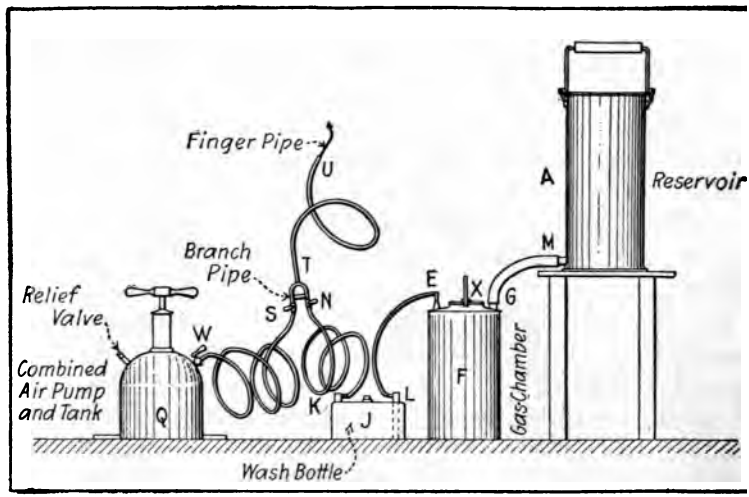


Fig. 33.—How Hydrogen Gas Generating Outfit is Set Up.

The apparatus is connected up as shown at Fig. 33. The structions for using are sent with each outfit, but a brief outl of the method of joining the parts may be of some value. bottom of the reservoir A must be higher than the top of the chamber F. Connect the lower outlet M of the reservoir A w the pipe G, coming out of the top of the gas chamber F. a short piece of 5/16-inch hose on the outlet E coming from gas chamber F, and kink this hose to constrict the passage prevent anything coming through it. Put a rubber stopper outlet H of gas chamber F, and inspect carefully to see that i *tightly in place.* Remove the hand-hole cover X from the

of the gas chamber, place a quantity of zinc on the grating. Next replace the hand-hole cover, making sure that it is securely fastened, and screw down tight on its gasket. An amount of water is placed in reservoir A and then a certain amount of vitriol is poured into the water. The wash-bottle J is filled half full of water, and its outlet K is connected to one side N of the branch pipe. The other side of the branch pipe S is joined to the outlet W on the air tank Q. The finger pipe U is connected with

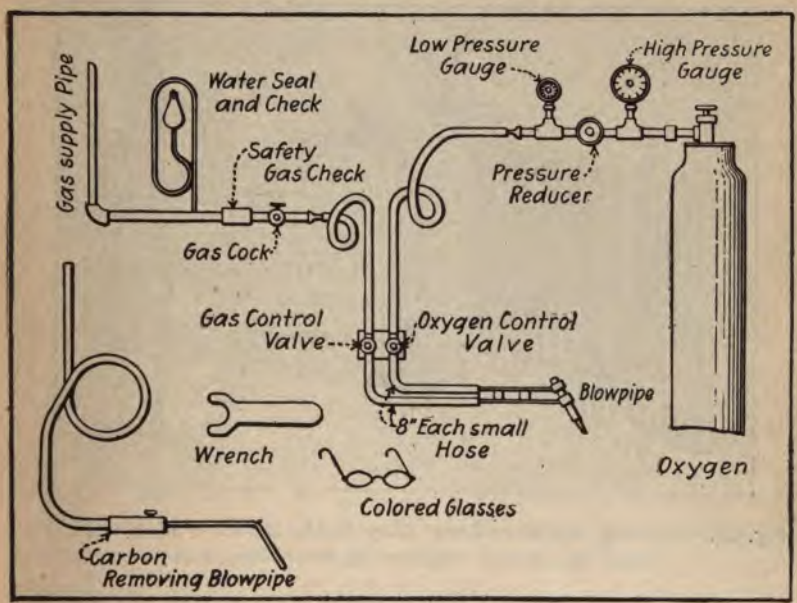


Fig. 34.—Method of Using Oxygen-Illuminating Gas Blow-Pipe Outfit.

the outlet T of the branch pipe. Both cocks S and M are closed. Next take the kink out of the hose connected to outlet E of the gas chamber and allow the air to escape until the charge of water and vitriol runs down from the reservoir into the gas chamber, then slip the free end of this hose over the outlet marked L on the wash-bottle.

As the acid solution acts on the zinc, hydrogen gas is liberated. This gas is not only hot, but is apt to be laden with globules of

acid. The function of the water in the wash-bottle is to cool the gas and to clean it before it goes to the finger pipe. Air pressure is pumped up into the tank. The petcock N in the branch pipe is then opened and the hydrogen gas issuing from the burner is ignited. The air is then admitted by opening the petcock S and adjusted until a hot-pointed flame of a greenish color is obtained that is suitable for burning. If any of the solution is spilled its

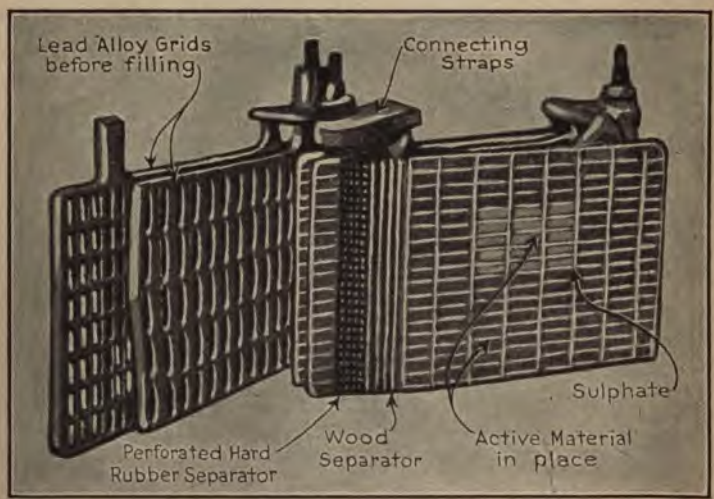


Fig. 35.—Showing Antimony-Lead Alloy Grids Before Filling and How Plates are Joined Together by Connecting Straps.

action may be neutralized by using Gold Dust, Pearline, washing soda, slaked lime, or ammonia. If burned when pouring acid into the reservoir, which, of course, will not occur unless this is carelessly done, apply olive oil to the burn and not water.

Another outfit suitable for lead burning consists of apparatus for burning a mixture of oxygen and illuminating gases. As oxygen is widely used in many garages for carbon removal, the same nk may be easily connected up to a single blow-pipe outfit. The *nections are very* clearly shown at Fig. 34. As the oxygen is d *under very high* pressure in the tank it is necessary to pro-

vide a pressure reducer so that its pressure will not be too high at the burner. The illuminating gas is turned on first and ignited, after which the oxygen supply is regulated, so that a good-burning flame is secured.

Lead Burning.—Lead burning consists in melting the metals and causing the parts to flow together and become joined without the aid of solder. It requires considerably more skill than any other form of brazing or soldering. A long step toward success may be taken by the proper arrangement of the work. It is usual to provide something which may serve as a mould or guide for the melted metal. For example, if two lead sheets are to be united by soldering, they are laid on a sheet of some non-heat-conducting substance, such as brick or asbestos. The work in the immediate neighborhood of the joint is carefully scraped so as to remove all oxide or scale which would tend to bind the melted lead and prevent it from flowing freely. The metal at the seam is heated by a very hot bit or the flame from a blowpipe, so that there is a uniform flow of lead across the seam. It is sometimes necessary to add more lead to the seam by melting a strip held in the hand. A flame of some sort is the most satisfactory source of heat for the average lead-burning job, because not only is the heat more uniform, but also more intense, and the lead melts at the desired point before the surrounding metal becomes sufficiently hot to soften. There are several types of blowpipe for this purpose on the market. The flame is usually small, sharp-pointed, and very intense. Lead burning is absolutely necessary, and is insisted upon in certain classes of work, for instance, in lining tanks with lead for chemical solutions, or for joining the grids and lugs of storage batteries.

Directions for Lead Burning: To connect the various plates comprising an element, the Gould Storage Battery Company advise the use of a special fixture to insure accuracy in spacing. Be careful to select the proper spacer (Fig. 36), and attach it to the burning-rack. Place the plates on the burning-rack so that the lugs extend through the slots in the spacer. Fit the connecting strap over the lugs. Adjust the spacer by the adjusting nuts until the strap is at the proper height on the lugs. Using the flame,

melt the lug to be burned and the adjoining material until they tend to run together. Using a piece of burning strip, melt the end thereof and fill in around the lug until the whole is a molten mass. Allow the joint to cool and cut off the protruding end of the lug with a pair of end-cutting pliers. Melt the remaining end of the lug till it flows into the strap. Repeat until all plates are burned to the strap.

Burning Plates to Old Straps: The storage battery company

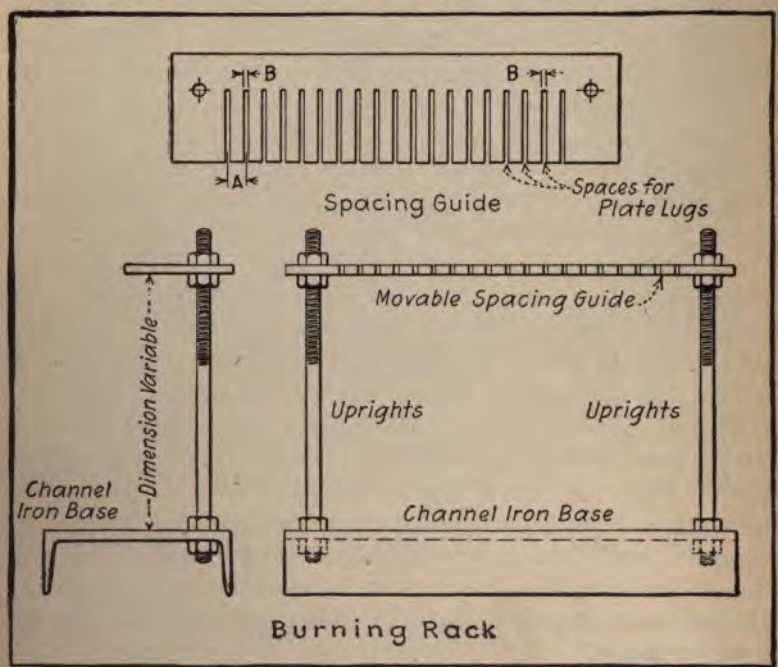


Fig. 36.—Gould Burning-Rack for Supporting Plates When Burning Plate Lugs to Busbars.

furnishes connector straps for nearly all the modern types of batteries. Sometimes it happens, however, that a battery of an old model or of a manufacture seldom used will be set up with straps cannot be duplicated. Under these circumstances the old should be utilized. With the hacksaw cut off the plates.

Cut slots in the strap, using the old lugs as a guide. Cleanse the strap thoroughly in ammoniated water and scrape clean. Using the proper spacer, proceed as described above.

To Burn Terminal Connector to Pillar Post: Scrape the parts clean. Fit the terminal connector to the pillar post. If the terminal connector does not set low enough, ream the terminal with the triangular scraper until the fit is exact. Heat with flame until the inside of terminal connector and outside of pillar post are one molten mass—*throughout.* Fill in with molten, burning material and allow to cool. To burn connecting link to pillar posts, proceed as above.

AUTOMOBILE LIGHTING AND STARTING.
BATTERY DEFECTS AND RESTORATION SUMMARIZED.

DEFECT	SYMPTOM	REMEDY
Broken or cracked cell jar.	Low level in one cell.	Replace with new jar.
Plates sulphated. Active material crystallized.	Gravity will not rise on charge.	Long slow charge at min. rate.
Lack of acid.	Gravity will not rise on charge.	Mix new electrolyte and fill cells recharged.
Electrolyte low.	Overheating.	Refill with water or electrolyte, depending on gravity.
Rapid charging.	Overheating.	Regulate generator output.
Solution level too high.	Electrolyte leaks out of vents.	Draw out surplus with syringe.
Cracked cell cover. Defective sealing. Poor vent.	Battery box eaten. Terminals corroded.	Do not fill cells so much.
Undercharging.	Battery capacity low.	Augment generator output; charge battery from outside source.
Charging too fast. Buckled or warped plates.	Overheating.	Charge at lower rate. Cell temperature must not be above 100° F.
Short circuits. Large sediment deposit.	Battery loses charge rapidly when idle.	Go over external wiring. Clean out sediment.
No current in cold weather.	Battery frozen.	Cannot usually be repaired. Try slow long charge.
Rotting wood box. Verdigris on terminals. Rotting conductor wire insulation.	Too much acid or electrolyte.	Take out surplus.
Separator failure.	Impure water. Electrolyte too rich in acid.	Use only distilled water. Dilute rich electrolyte.
Separators charred or punctured.	Overheating. Loss of charge.	Replace separators. Maintain level of electrolyte.
Lights uncertain.	Battery nearly discharged.	Give boosting charge from outside source.
Current output low even though liquid is at proper level.	Gravity of electrolyte too low.	Bring gravity up to 1.280°. by charging.
Excessive current consumption.	Gravity of electrolyte down to 1.100°.	Give long slow charge 3 to 5 amps. rate.
One cell defective. Poor separators.	Total voltage low. Weak current.	Rebuild poor cell.
Active material shedding.	Large sediment deposit.	Rebuild battery.
Battery not properly fastened down.	Cell jars break or crack.	Fit proper hold-down clamps.
Acid escapes through vents.	Terminals corroded.	Clean with ammonia or washing soda; coat with vaseline.
Excessive gassing. Poor box ventilation.	Metal battery box corroded.	Use lower charging rate-coat box interior with asphaltum paint.
Battery discharged.	Starting motor will not start engine. Lights burn dim	Give thorough charge from outside current.
[illegible] not charging prop-	Battery needs frequent boosting charges.	Overhaul generator. Regulate for proper charging rate.

CHAPTER IV

Battery-Charging Methods—Currents and Voltages—Electrolytic Rectifiers—Vibrator Rectifiers—Mercury Arc Rectifiers—Rotary Converters—Rheostats—Lamp-Bank Resistance—Charging Precautions—Charging Vehicle Batteries—Winter Care of Automobile Storage Batteries.

THE equipment to be used in charging storage batteries depends entirely upon the type and size of batteries to be charged, the current voltage and character available for charging, and the individual characteristics of the batteries themselves. Storage batteries can be charged only with direct current, i. e., that which flows always from the same direction. It is evident that the use of alternating current, if the mains were attached directly to the battery, would result in rapid changes in the interior of the cells, and as the flow in one direction would tend to neutralize that in the other, the plates would depreciate very rapidly. If alternating current is the only kind available, this must be transformed or rectified into direct current. All cells cannot be charged at the same rate. The greater the capacity of the battery and the higher its discharge rate, the greater the amperage of the current that can be used in charging. While the voltage of a storage battery made of certain materials will not vary with the size, the amperage or current output increases with the plate size and number. A lead-plate storage battery no longer than a thimble will have just as high voltage as one as big as a barrel. It will be evident, however, that if too much current is passed through a small cell it will be injured, whereas too little current passed through a large cell will have but little effect on changing the character of the plates.

There are two general methods in use for charging either the sulphuric-acid-lead batteries or the alkali-nickel-iron batteries used in the various commercial applications. The first method, and the

one most widely followed, is called the constant-current system. The other system, which has only received attention lately, is called the constant-potential method. Two other schemes are used also which are modifications of the two previously named general

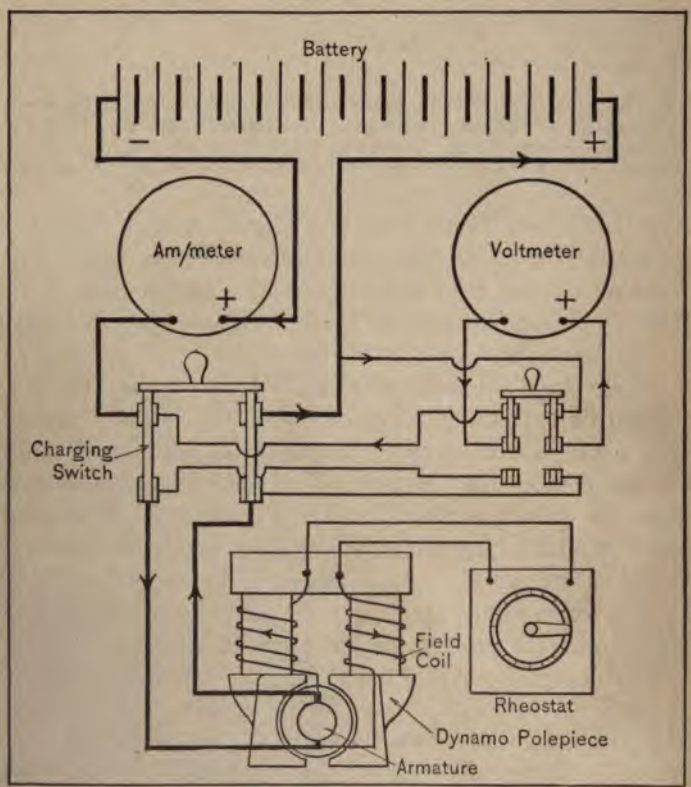


Fig. 37.—Battery-Charging Outfit, Having Field-Coil Rheostat.

methods, one known as the multiple voltage system, the other as a fixed resistance method. The constant potential method is said to offer a number of advantages. There is less evaporation of electrolyte and less shifting of rheostats is needed. Any form of *ttery may be* charged by means of a fixed resistance connected *eries. When the* battery counter electromotive force is nearly

equal to the voltage of the line, this method approximates the general characteristics of the constant potential system. If the voltage of the battery is considerably less than that of the charging current, the characteristics will approximate the constant-current charging method. It may be stated that the variation in the current used for charging is inversely proportional to the difference between the maximum counter voltage of the battery and the potential or voltage of the supply circuit.

The usual method of charging batteries in garages is to con-

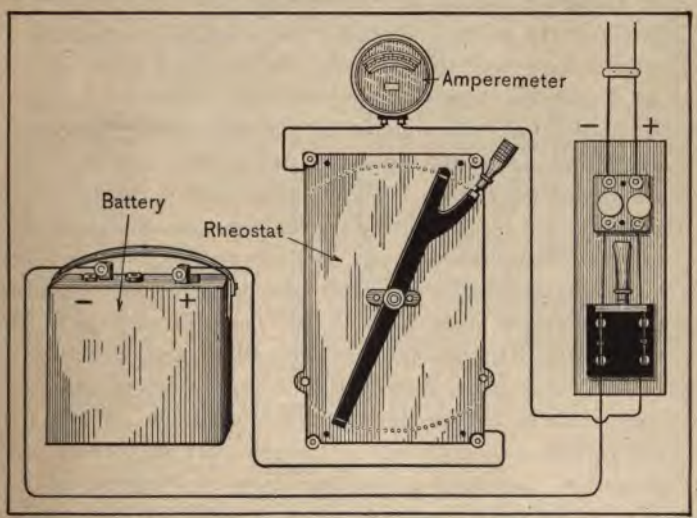


Fig. 38.—Direct-Current Battery-Charging Outfit, With Rheostat in Line Between Battery and Main-Line Switch.

nect them up in series. In order to meet the requirements of the best battery-charging practice it is stated that they should never be charged in series unless they are all composed of the same general type, size and capacity of cells, and that all of the batteries are in the same state or condition of discharge. The disadvantages of this method are that the batteries that have not been discharged so much as the others are apt to be overcharged, and if the battery capacity varies very much, the charging rate may be *too low for some cells* and too high for others. These disadvan-

tages do not apply in charging vehicle batteries where the individual cells are of the same size, type and capacity. The only way the series charging can be carried on is by using a compromise charging rate and carefully testing the various batteries from time to time to make sure that they will be removed when properly charged. The types and sizes of cells used in automobile starting, lighting and ignition batteries do not vary as much as might be expected, and if a compromise charging rate is intelligently selected, it is a method that gives fairly good results in practice, though it is theoretically wrong.

When a direct current of 110 volts potential is available Edison batteries composed of 60 cells or lead-plate batteries of 40 to 44 cells may be charged directly from the line by means of a rheostat to regulate the amount of current passing through the batteries, which is placed in series with each battery. If the service is of higher voltage, a motor generator or rotary converter set may be used. If alternating current only is available, various types of rectifiers are needed. If only one battery is to be charged and if the voltage of the generator can be adjusted by means of a rheostat connected in series with the field coils of the dynamo, as shown at Fig. 37, then no rheostat will be needed between the battery and the dynamo, because the charging current can be kept to the proper value by varying the dynamo voltage. When a mercury arc rectifier is employed in battery charging, the charging current can be regulated by control dials and a rheostat is not needed. The various types of rectifiers suitable for use with alternating current are to be described in proper sequence. Rotary converters may be used with either direct or alternating current, depending entirely upon the type of motor used. It is evident that the dynamo of such a combination must always be of the direct-current type, though its output will vary according to the power of the actuating motor, the method of winding, and wire used in field and armature coils. The motor may be a direct-current type, wound for high voltage, or it may be a type wound to operate on alternating current.

The arrangement of the essential parts of a typical battery-*charging system* where the current value is altered by a dynamo

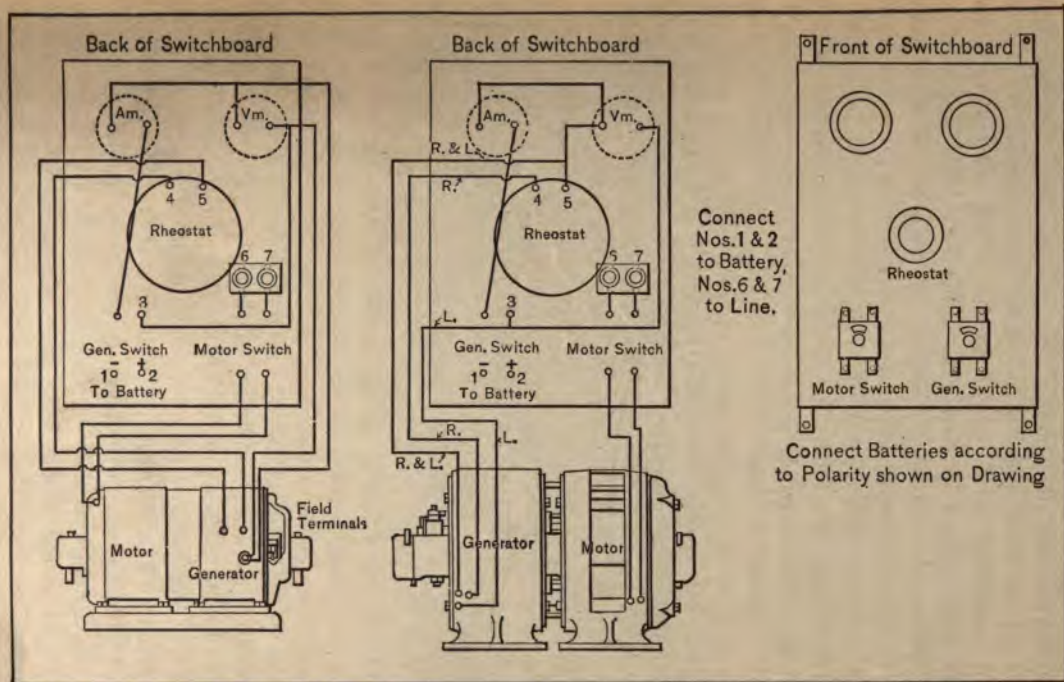


Fig. 39.—How to Wire Rotary Converter Charging Outfit, With Ammeter Rheostat and Voltmeter, Showing Front and Rear of Switchboard.

field-coil rheostat is shown at Fig. 37. A shunt-wound generator is employed, and the main leads from the armature brushes are connected to the lower poles of a double-pole knife-switch. The battery is connected to the upper portion of the switch, an amperemeter being placed in circuit as indicated. The hinges of a small double-throw, double-pole switch are connected with a voltmeter. The amperemeter and voltmeter should be of the permanent type. Before throwing in the charging switch it is possible to read the voltage of the battery, and also by throwing the switch to read that of the charging generator so that it may be adjusted to a slightly greater voltage. The main switch is then closed and the rheostat used to raise the voltage sufficiently to drive a suitable charging current through the battery. With a system of this kind a circuit breaker or automatic overload switch should be included in the main line to protect the apparatus in case of accidental short circuit. An underload circuit breaker should also be provided to shut off the battery if the current falls to such a point that the battery will discharge through the generator. These are not shown in the simplified wiring diagram, neither are the fuses that prudence dictates should be used.

The Westinghouse Vibrator Rectifier is an inexpensive form of apparatus to charge small batteries from ordinary lighting circuits. The device, which is shown at Fig. 42 A, reduces the voltage of the lighting circuit to the proper value by the use of a small double step-down transformer, and rectifies this reduced voltage to the uni-directional voltage necessary for battery charging by electrically operating switching mechanism. The transformer serves the double purpose of diminishing the line voltage for the battery to be charged and also for providing a return path for the direct current. The charging current flows from one end of the secondary winding, and after passing through a regulating resistance passes through a pair of contacts, which are closed automatically and at the proper time, and out from the center point of the armature to the battery, from which it returns to the neutral point of the transformer. During the next half cycle the voltage in the transformer secondary is reversed in direction and the other pair of contacts is closed and the voltage is applied to

the battery from the half of the secondary that has previously been idle. As the current flow is in the same direction as that previously supplied, the battery is charged exactly the same as if uni-directional current from a generator was used.

The element upon which the success of the outfit depends is the vibrating mechanism, upon which devolves the duty to reverse connections in synchronism with the voltage and also exactly in step with the transformer secondary voltage in such a manner as to open the current character circuit at the instant of zero current and prevent injurious wear of the contacts by sparking. The following description of the action of this rectifier is repro-

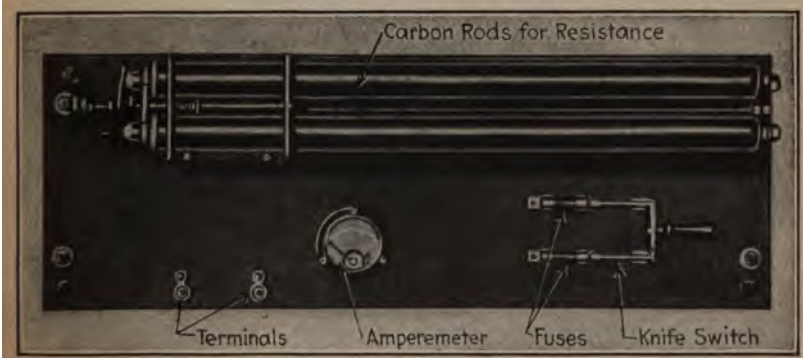


Fig. 40.—Carbon Rod Rheostat.

duced from the *Electric Journal,* and the action of the device may be understood by studying the wiring diagram shown at Fig. 42 B. "Two small laminated iron magnets, marked *A.C.* magnets, are connected in series across one-half of the transformer secondary, connections being made so that the corresponding ends of the magnet are of the same magnetic polarity. A direct-current magnet, polarized by shunt current from the battery, is so placed as to bring its ends within the effective field areas of the *A.C.* magnets. Since the ends of the *D.C.* magnet are of opposite polarity, they are forced at any instant in opposite directions by the fields of the *A.C.* magnets and one pair of contacts is closed. During the succeeding half cycle the A.C. mag-

nets are reversed in polarity, while the *D.C.* magnet is not, the impelling force is reversed, and the armature takes such a position as to close the other pair of contacts. One side of the battery is thus connected alternately to the opposite ends of the secondary of the transformer in synchronism with the alternating voltage, while the other side is permanently connected to the center point. Exact timing to insure sparkless operation, by

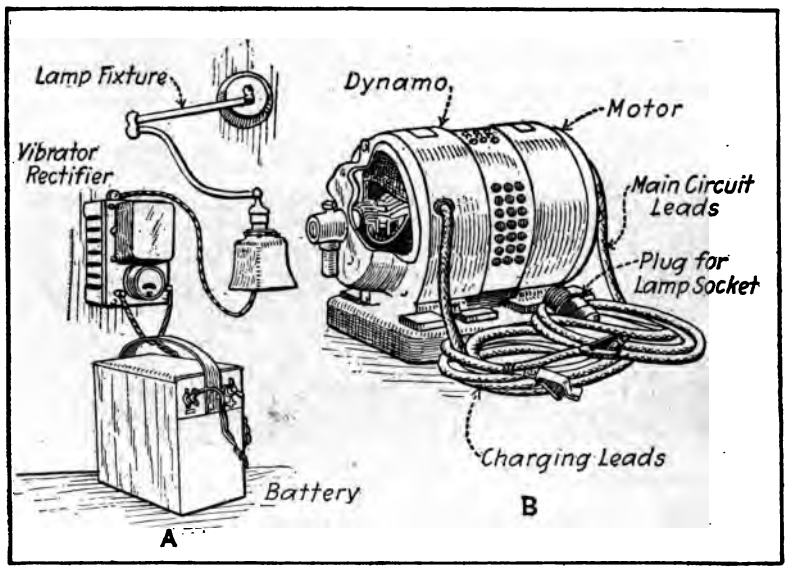


Fig. 41.—Devices for Rectifying Alternating Current. A—Vibrator Type Rectifier. B—Small Rotary Converter Set.

breaking the current-carrying circuit at the time when the battery and transformer voltages are equal and opposite and no current is flowing, is secured by connecting in series with the *A.C.* magnets, a resistance which alters the power-factor of the current in the magnets without affecting that of the load current in the transformer. This change in power-factor translates in time the impelling force, with respect to the current in the contacts, and secures the result of sparkless operation. This phase-controlling *resistance is made* variable, in order that the outfit will be ap-

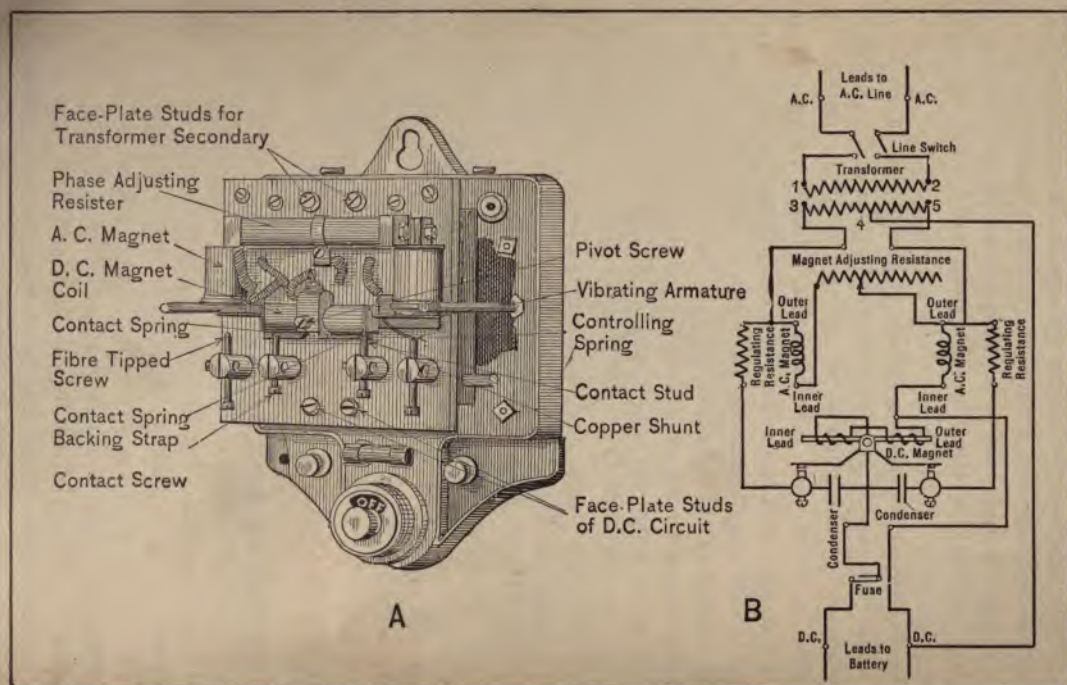
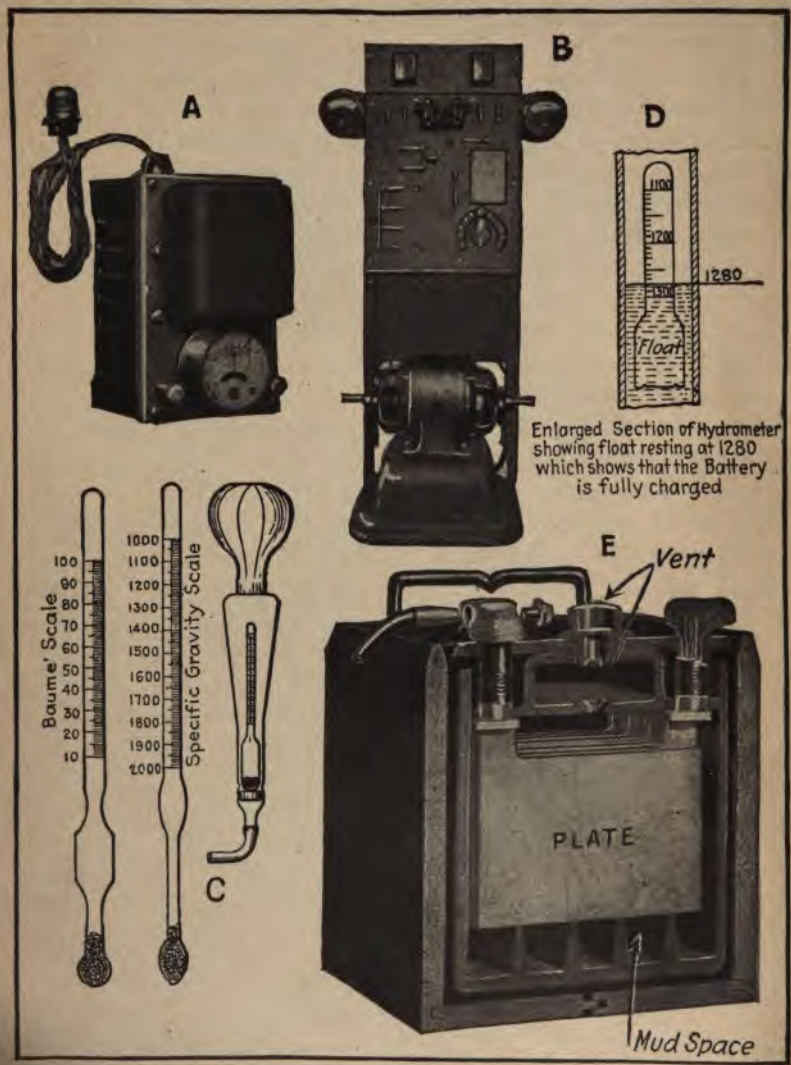


Fig. 42.—Construction of Westinghouse Vibrator Type Alternating-Current Rectifier at A, and Wiring Diagram Showing Operation at B.

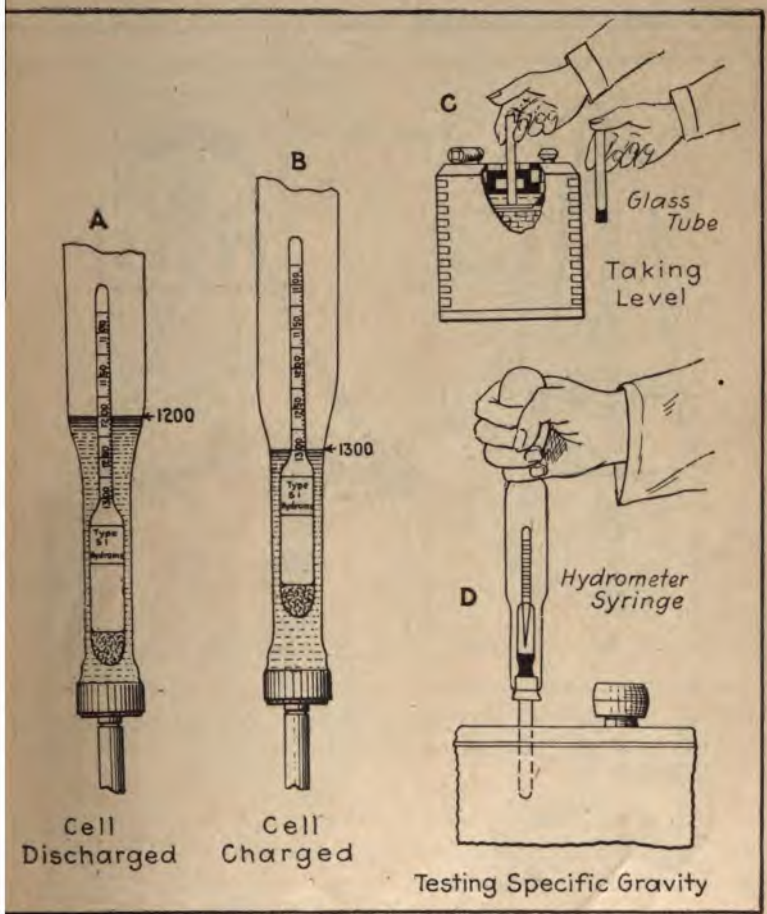
it can be passed through the battery. Alternating current is that which flows first in one direction and immediately afterward in the reverse direction. When used in charging storage batteries some form of rectifier is essential. The rectifier may be a simple form, as shown at Fig. 43 A, which is intended to be coupled directly into a lighting circuit by screwing the plug attached to the flexible cord in the lamp socket. A rotary converter set, such as shown at B, or at Figs. 39 and 41, may also be used; in this the alternating current is depended on to run an electric motor, which drives the armature of a direct-current dynamo. The current to charge the battery is taken from the dynamo as it is suitable for the purpose, whereas that flowing through the motor cannot be used directly.

The view at Fig. 43 C shows a usual form of hydrometer syringe which is introduced into the vent hole of the storage battery, such as shown at Fig. 44, and enough electrolyte drawn out of the cell to determine its specific gravity. This is shown on the hydrometer scale, as indicated in the enlarged sections. A very useful appliance where considerable storage-battery work is done is shown at Fig. 45 A. This is a stand of simple form, designed to carry a carboy containing either acid, distilled water or electrolyte. In fact, it might be desirable to have three of these stands, which are inexpensive, one for each of the liquids mentioned. In many repair shops the replenishing of storage batteries is done in a wasteful manner, as the liquid is carried around in a bottle or old water pitcher and poured from that container into the battery, often without the use of a funnel. The chances of spilling are, of course, greater than if the liquids were carefully handled and more time than necessary is consumed in doing the work. The stand shown is about 5 feet high and is fitted with castors so it may be easily moved about the shop if necessary. For example, in taking care of electric vehicle batteries, it may be easier to move the carboy to the battery than to remove the heavy battery from the automobile. The container for the liquid is placed on top of the stand and the liquid is conveyed from it by a rubber tube. The rubber tube is attached to a glass tube extending down nearly to the bottom of the liquid. At the bottom



ig. 43.—Devices Used in Charging and Caring for Storage Batteries.

f the rubber tube an ordinary chemist's clip, which controls the ow of liquid, is placed. In order to start a flow of liquid it is ecessary to blow into a bent glass vent tube, which is also in- erted into the stopper. Once the rubber tube has become filled



ig. 44.—Outlining Positions of Hydrometer in Electrolyte When Cell is Discharged at A and When Cell is Charged at B. Method of Determining Electrolyte Level at C. How to Take Specific Gravity Reading Shown at B.

with liquid, merely opening the clip will allow the liquid to
into the battery as desired.

In most communities the incandescent lighting circuit is
for charging batteries on account of the voltage of the po
circuits being too high. The incandescent lighting circuit ma

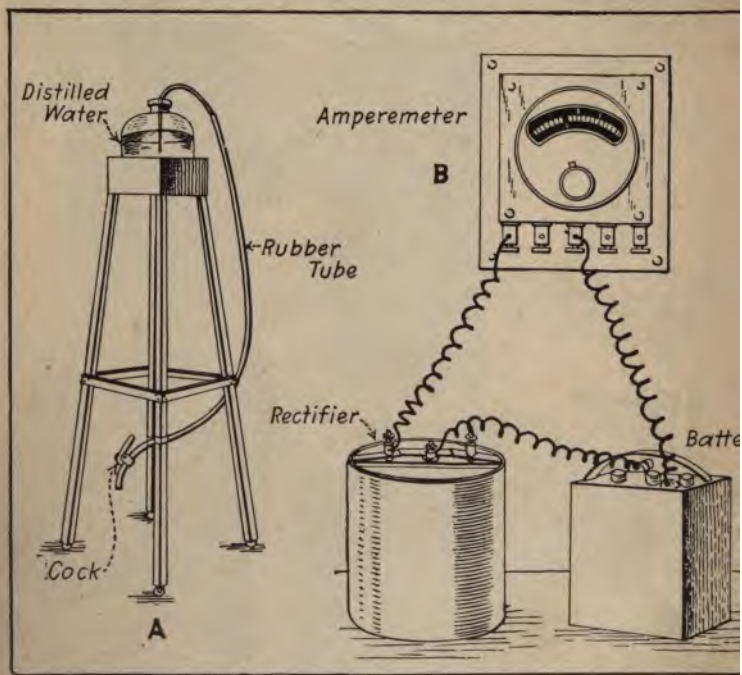
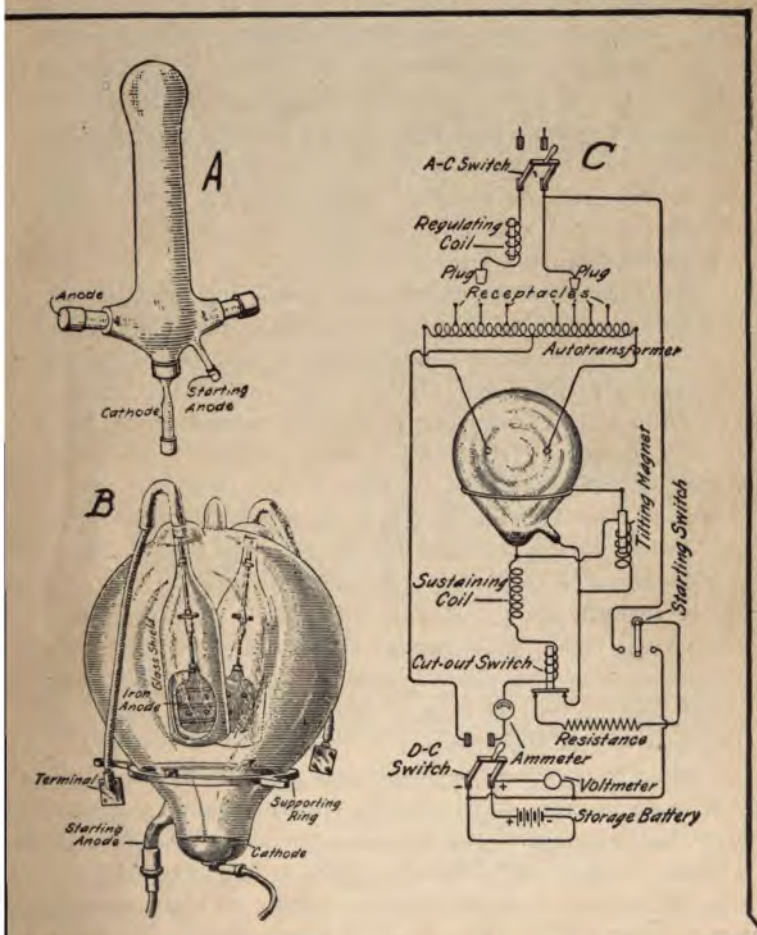


**Fig. 45.—Simple Stand for Carrying Electrolyte or Distilled W
Bottle at A. Method of Using Rollinson Electrolyte Rect
Shown at B.**

any one of six forms. A direct current of either 110 or 220 v
used over short distances, either 220 or 440 volts on three-
circuits over long distances, alternating current at a cons
potential, usually 110 volts and in various polyphase systems.
ght be stated that in the majority of instances house and ga
ting circuits furnish direct current of 110 volts. We will
the devices used with the alternating form, one of whi

own at Fig. 45 B. This is known as the Rollinson electrolytic ctifier, which is based upon the following principles: When an ement of aluminum and a corresponding element or plate of iron e submerged in a solution of certain salts, using these elements negative and positive terminals, respectively, the passage of an



. 46.—*Mercury Rectifier Bulbs and Methods of Wiring to Charge Storage Battery From Alternating-Current Mains.*

electric current through the solution produces a chemical action which forms hydroxide of aluminum. A film of hydroxide thus formed on the aluminum element repels the current. The arrangement of the cell will then permit current to pass through it in one direction only, the film of chemical preventing it from passing in the opposite direction. The result is that if an alternating current is supplied to the cell a direct pulsating current can be obtained from it. The outfits usually include a transformer for reducing the line voltage to the lower voltages needed for battery-charging purposes. Regulation of the current is effected in the simplest type by immersing the elements more or less in the solution in the jar. As complete instructions are furnished by the manufacturers, it will not be necessary to consider this form of rectifier in detail.

One of the most commonly used rectifying means is the mercury arc bulb. This device is a large glass tube of peculiar shape, as shown at Fig. 46, which contains a quantity of mercury in the base. On either side of this lower portion two arms of the glass bulbs extend outwardly, these being formed at their extremities into graphite terminals or anodes, indicated as A and A-1 in the diagram at Fig. 47. The current from the auto transformer is then attached one to each side. The base forms the cathode or mercury terminal for the negative wires. The theory of this action is somewhat complicated, but may be explained simply without going too much into detail. The interior of the tube is in a condition of partial vacuum, and while the mercury is in a state of excitation a vapor is supplied. This condition can be kept up only as long as there is a current flowing toward the negative. If the direction of the current be reversed so that the formerly negative pole becomes a positive the current ceases to flow, as in order to pass in the opposite direction it would require the formation of a new cathode element. Therefore the flow is always toward one electrode, which is kept excited by it. A tube of this nature would cease to operate on alternating-current voltage after half a cycle if some means were not provided to maintain a flow continuously toward the negative electrode. In the General Electric rectifier tube there are two anodes and one

cathode. Each of the former is connected to a separate side of the alternating current supply and also through reactances to one side of the load and the cathode to the other. As the current alternates, first one anode and then the other becomes positive, and there is a continuous flow toward the mercury cathode, thence

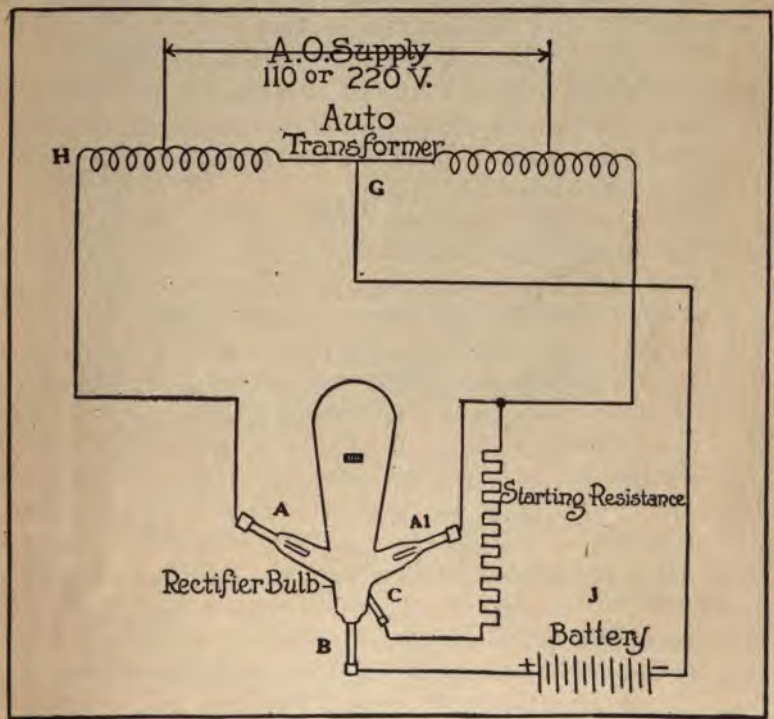


Fig. 47.—Wiring Diagram Defining Use of Mercury Arc Rectifiers.

through the load (in this case the battery to be charged), and back to the opposite side of the supply through a reactance. At each reversal the latter discharges, thus maintaining the arc until the voltage reaches the value required to maintain the current against the counter E. M. F. and also reducing the fluctuations in the direct current. In this way a true continuous flow is obtained, *with very small loss* in transformation.

A small electrode connected to one side of the alternating circuit is used for starting the arc. A slight tilting of the tube makes a mercury bridge between the terminal and draws an arc as soon as the tube is turned to a vertical position. The ordinary form used for vehicle batteries has a maximum current capacity of 30 amperes for charging the lead plate type, and a larger form, intended for use with Edison batteries, yields up to a limit of 50 amperes. Those for charging ignition batteries will pass 5 amperes for one to charge six cells and a larger one that will pass 10 amperes for from three to ten batteries. As is true of the electrolytic rectifier, complete instructions are furnished by the manufacturer for their use.

The Wagner device, which is shown at Fig. 43 A, operates on a new principle, and comprises a small two-coil transformer to reduce the line voltage to a low figure, the rectifier proper, which consists of a vibrating armature in connection with an electromagnet, and a resistance to limit the flow of the charging current. A meter is included as an integral part of the set for measuring the current flow. All sets are sold for use with ignition or lighting batteries of low voltage, with a lamp socket-plug and attaching cord, the idea being to utilize an ordinary lighting circuit of 110 volts A. C. The magnet and vibrating armature accomplish the rectification of the current with little loss, the action after connection to the battery which is to be charged proceeding automatically. By a simple device, the current stoppage throws the main contacts open, so the partially charged battery cannot be rapidly discharged. While the rectifiers are constructed to use 60-cycle, 110-volt alternating current, they will work at all frequencies from 57 to 63. The size made will pass three to five amperes, the voltage being sufficient to recharge a three-cell battery.

When batteries are to be charged from a direct current it is possible to use a rheostat to regulate the voltage at the terminals. The construction of a rheostat is very simple, as it consists only of a group of high-resistance coils of wire mounted in insulating material, and having suitable connections with segments on the base plate, upon which is mounted the operating arm that makes the contact. According to the manner in which these are made

and wired a large resistance is introduced at first, gradually decreasing as the lever is moved over, or it may operate in the reverse fashion, a large amount of current being allowed to pass at the first contact and less as the handle progresses across the path. Rheostats should only be purchased after consulting a capable electrician, as the required resistance must be figured out from the voltage of the circuit to be used, the maximum battery

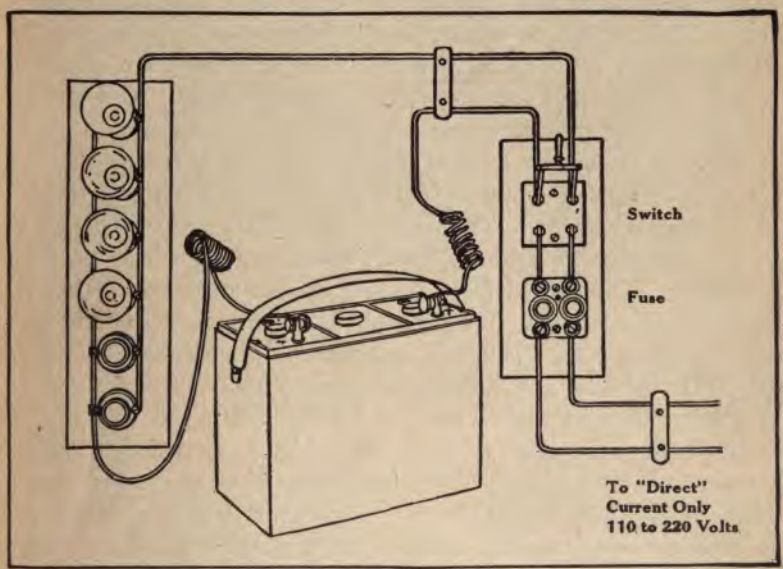


Fig. 48.—Charging Storage Battery From Direct Current With the Lamp-Bank Regulation.

current, the charging rate in amperes and the number of cells to be charged at one time.

By far the simplest method of charging storage batteries is by interposing a lamp-bank resistance instead of the rheostat. These are easily made by any garage mechanic and are very satisfactory for charging ignition or lighting batteries. Standard carbon lamps of the voltage of the circuit shown should be used, and the amperes needed for charging can be controlled by varying the candle power and the number of lamps used. If the lamps are to

operate on 110-volt circuit, a 16-candle-power carbon filar lamp will permit one-half ampere to pass; to 32-candle-power allow 1 ampere to pass. If it is desired, therefore, to pass t amperes through the battery, one could use 3 32-candle-p lamps, or 6 16-candle-power lamps. If the lamps are to burn 220 volts, it should be remembered that when the voltag doubled the amperage is cut in half, therefore the 32-ca power, 220-volt carbon filament bulbs will only pass half an pere. The method of wiring is very simple, as may be re ascertained by referring to Fig. 48. The line wires are atta to a fuse block and then to a double knife switch. The sv and fuse block are usually mounted on a panel of insulating terial such as slate or marble. One of the wires, the positiv the circuit, runs from the switch directly to the positive tern of the storage battery. The negative wire from the switch p to the lamp-bank resistance. The lamps are placed in pa connection with respect to each other, but in series connectio respect to the battery. When coupled in this manner the cu must overcome the combined resistance of the storage bat which is very low, and that of the lamps. This prevents the tery being charged with current of too high voltage.

A water resistance is easily constructed by using a s wooden tub or half barrel. Two sheet-lead plates are suspe from wood sticks resting on top of the tub, the supports b movable to bring the lead plates closer together or separate t as desired. A wire is brought from the battery, as shown in 49, to one side of the switch, then to one of the plates in water resistance, then from the other plate of the water resist to an ammeter; to the other side of the switch and from t to the opposite pole of the battery. Such a resistance is used making a test discharge of a vehicle battery; it would not very practical way of charging batteries because of the great sorption of current by the water. Before starting a dischi care should be taken to have the lead plates and wires separ The tub can then be filled with clean water and the switch cl A small quantity of electrolyte should then be poured in the w *a very little at a* time, until the ammeter shows that the pr

amount of current is flowing. The farther apart the plates are, the greater the resistance. As more electrolyte is added, even if the plates are not disturbed, the resistance becomes less. Never let the plates touch each other.

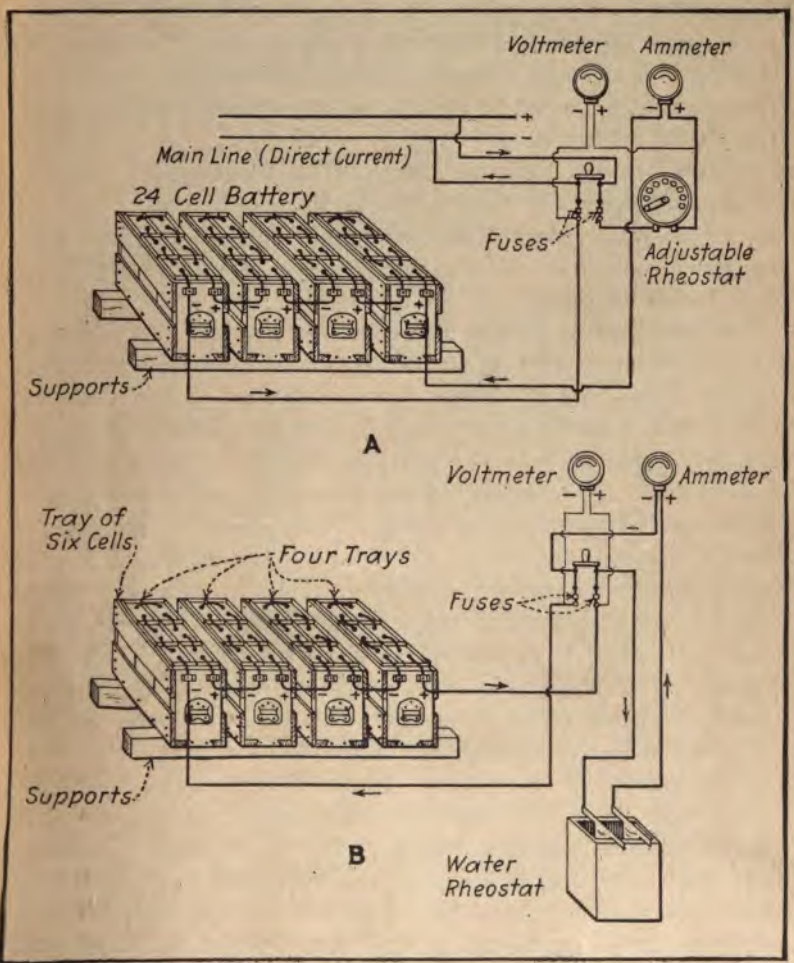


Fig. 49.—Method of Charging 24-Cell Vehicle Battery at A. How Water Rheostat is Used in Making Test Discharge Outlined at B.

The points to be especially emphasized in connection with the charge are:

First—On regular charges keep the rates as low as practical and cut off the current promptly. It is preferable to cut off a little too soon rather than to run too long where there is any question.

Second—Overcharges must be given at stated intervals and continued to a complete maximum. They should be cut off at the proper point, but when in doubt it is safer to run too long, rather than to cut off too soon.

Third—Do not limit the charge by fixed voltage.

Fourth—Keep the temperature within safe limits.

Fifth—Keep naked flames away from cells while charging, as the gas given off is inflammable. Always see that gas vents are clear before charging.

Winter Care of Storage Batteries.—It would not do simply to leave the battery in the car for a period of, say, four or five months without giving it any care or attention, for in that case at the end of that time it would be found to have its plates so thickly covered with lead sulphate as to make it practically useless. For storage batteries "to rest is to rust" and become ruined, unless special precautions are taken. Automobile storage batteries are all or nearly all of the sealed-in type, from which the elements cannot be removed without a great deal of trouble. Therefore, the only method of keeping the plates intact consists in charging the battery at intervals of about two weeks. The following advice concerning the care of batteries during a protracted period of idleness of the car is due to the Willard Storage Battery Company, and refers especially to the batteries of starting and lighting systems.

At intervals of two weeks the engine should be run until the electrolyte shows a specific gravity of 1.280. If this is done regularly the engine need be run only about an hour each time. But the owner should not be in possession of an hydrometer, it is ter to run the engine two or three hours each time, for the sake *fety.* To charge the battery properly the engine should be *at a speed* corresponding to a car speed of about 20 mph

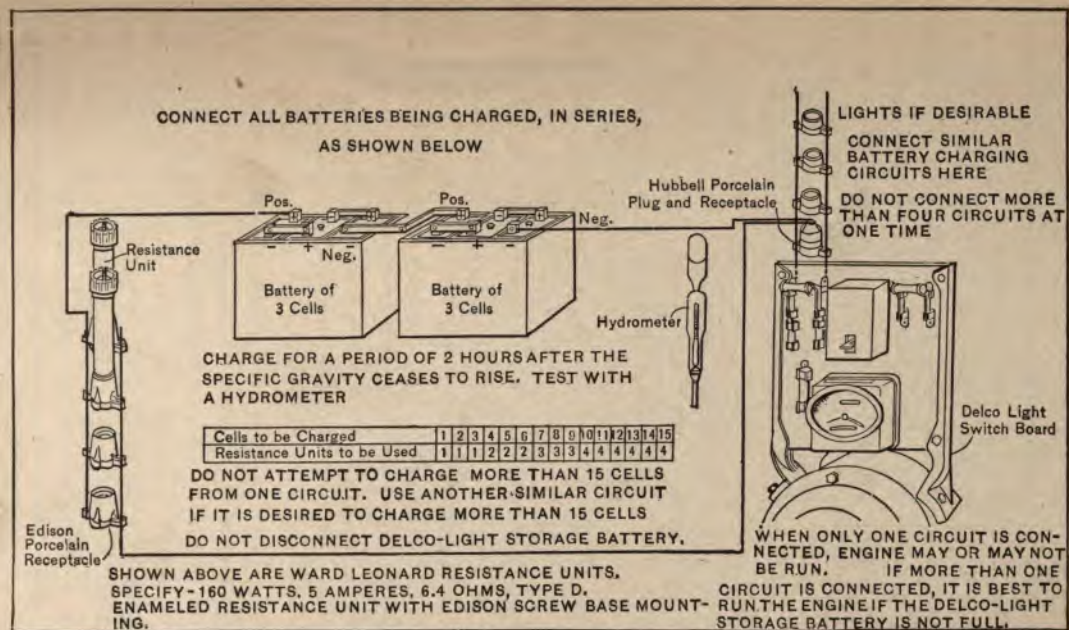

CONNECT ALL BATTERIES BEING CHARGED, IN SERIES,
AS SHOWN BELOW
LIGHTS IF DESIRABLE
CONNECT SIMILAR BATTERY CHARGING CIRCUITS HERE
DO NOT CONNECT MORE THAN FOUR CIRCUITS AT ONE TIME
Hubbell Porcelain Plug and Receptacle
Pos.
Pos.
Neg.
Neg.
Resistance Unit
Battery of 3 Cells
Battery of 3 Cells
Hydrometer
CHARGE FOR A PERIOD OF 2 HOURS AFTER THE SPECIFIC GRAVITY CEASES TO RISE. TEST WITH A HYDROMETER
Delco Light Switch Board
Cells to be Charged 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15
Resistance Units to be Used 1 1 1 2 2 2 3 3 4 4 4 4 4 4 4
DO NOT ATTEMPT TO CHARGE MORE THAN 15 CELLS FROM ONE CIRCUIT. USE ANOTHER SIMILAR CIRCUIT IF IT IS DESIRED TO CHARGE MORE THAN 15 CELLS
DO NOT DISCONNECT DELCO-LIGHT STORAGE BATTERY.
Edison Porcelain Receptacle
WHEN ONLY ONE CIRCUIT IS CONNECTED, ENGINE MAY OR MAY NOT BE RUN. IF MORE THAN ONE CIRCUIT IS CONNECTED, IT IS BEST TO RUN THE ENGINE IF THE DELCO-LIGHT STORAGE BATTERY IS NOT FULL.
SHOWN ABOVE ARE WARD LEONARD RESISTANCE UNITS. SPECIFY-160 WATTS, 5 AMPERES, 6.4 OHMS, TYPE D. ENAMELED RESISTANCE UNIT WITH EDISON SCREW BASE MOUNTING.

Fig. 50.—Diagram Outlining Necessary Connections for Using Delco Battery Charging Equipment.

on the direct drive. There may be cases, however, where the owner is compelled to store his car in a space where it is practically impossible to run the engine. Where this is the case, it is recommended, if electric current is available, that the owner purchase a rectifier or small charging machine. A charge over night, or for about twelve hours, every two weeks with this apparatus, will be sufficient to keep the battery in a healthy condition. Before beginning the charging the battery should be inspected to see if it is filled with solution. If the solution needs replenishing, distilled water should be added until the solution fully covers the plates, which may be determined by removing the vent plugs and looking down into the cells. In case it is impossible to run the engine for charging and the owner does not care to incur the expense of purchasing a rectifier, he should remove the battery from the car and arrange for its storage at a garage which has charging facilities, stipulating that it must be charged every two weeks. The cost of having it so cared for will be nominal and will prove excellent insurance against deterioration.

To care for storage batteries of a type that is easily taken apart the following method is recommended: First charge the battery until every cell is in a state of complete charge. If there should be any short-circuited cells they should be put into condition before the charge is commenced, so that they will receive the full benefit of the charge. Then remove the elements from the jars, separating the positive from the negative groups, and place in water for about one hour to dissolve out any electrolyte adhering to the plates. Then withdraw the groups and allow them to drain and dry. The positives when dry are ready to be put away. If the negatives in drying become hot enough to steam, they should be rinsed or sprinkled again with clean water and then allowed to dry thoroughly. When dry, the negatives should be replaced the electrolyte (of from 1.275 to 1.300 specific gravity), care ken to immerse them completely and allow them to soak or four hours. Two groups may be placed in a jar and d with electrolyte. After rinsing and drying the plates o be put away.

er separators should be rinsed in water. Wood sepa-

TABLE I—CHARGING RATES

Ampere-Hours Discharged	Time Available until next Adjustment of Charging Current.							
	¼ hour	½ hour	¾ hour	1 hour	1¼ hours	1½ hours	1¾ hours	2 hours
	Amperes	Amperes	Amperes	Amperes	Amperes	Amperes	Amperes	Amperes
10	8	6	5	5	4	4	3	3
20	16	13	11	10	9	8	7	6
30	24	20	17	15	13	12	11	10
40	32	26	23	20	18	16	14	13
50	40	33	28	25	22	20	18	16
60	48	40	34	30	26	24	22	20
70	56	46	40	35	31	28	25	23
80	64	53	45	40	35	32	29	27
90	72	60	51	45	40	36	33	30
100	80	66	57	50	44	40	36	33
110	88	73	63	55	49	44	40	37
120	96	80	68	60	53	48	43	40
130	104	87	74	65	58	52	47	43
140	112	93	80	70	62	56	51	47
150	120	100	86	75	67	60	54	50
160	128	106	91	80	71	64	58	53
170	136	113	97	85	75	68	62	57
180	144	120	103	90	80	72	65	60
190	152	127	108	95	84	76	69	63
200	160	133	114	100	89	80	73	67
210	168	140	120	105	93	84	76	70
220	176	147	126	110	98	88	80	73
230	184	153	131	115	102	92	84	77
240	192	160	137	120	106	96	87	80
250	200	167	143	125	111	100	91	83

EXPLANATION.—In the left-hand column find the figure nearest to the ampere-hours discharged from the battery; follow across to the column headed by the available time. The figure at this intersection is the current to be used.

EXAMPLE.—Ampere-hour meter reading, 103 ampere-hours discharged; time available for boosting, one hour. Start at 100 in the left-hand column; follow across to the column headed 1 hour and find 50, which is the current to be used.

Fig. 51.—Table of Charging Rates.

rators, after having been in service, will not stand much handling and had better be thrown away. If it is thought worth while to keep them they must be immersed in water or weak electrolyte, and in reassembling the electrolyte must be put into the cells immediately, as wet wood separators must not stand exposed to the air for any unnecessary moment, especially when in contact with plates. Storage batteries always should be stored in a dry place, preferably in one where the temperature will never fall below 40° Fahr. Storage-battery solution or electrolyte varies greatly in density between the points of complete charge and complete discharge. When completely discharged the electrolyte of the average battery has a specific gravity of 1.14, and a sulphuric acid solution of 1.14 specific gravity has a freezing-point of about 10° Fahr. Therefore, if a completely discharged battery is allowed to stand where it is exposed to extremely low temperature it is quite possible for the electrolyte to freeze and the cells to be injured in consequence. However, as already pointed out, a battery for other reasons must not be allowed to stand in the discharged condition for any length of time. With increasing charge the density of the electrolyte increases until, when the charge is complete, it attains 1.28 specific gravity. The freezing temperature of the solution drops very quickly as the specific gravity increases, somewhat as follows:

Specific Gravity.	Freezing-Point Degrees.
1.14	+10
1.16	+ 5
1.175	— 4
1.20	—16
1.225	—36
1.25	—60
1.28	—85

Consequently, there is no possibility of a storage battery being injured by freezing in this latitude if it is kept in a fair state of charge. The freezing-points of electrolyte of different specific gravities are also shown in graphic chart at Fig. 53.

Charging Vehicle Batteries of Lead-Plate Type.—The following extracts on modern electric vehicle batteries are reproduced from an article by J. H. Tracy and with the permission of The

Electric Storage Battery Company, who issue the complete discussion in their Bulletin No. 156. These instructions do not apply to all types of lead-plate batteries, however, but refer to the latest vehicle types made by this company.

To the user of lead acid storage batteries in self-propelled vehicles, the steady improvement of recent years is hardly noticeable to the eye, although there has been an increase in the watt-hour capacity of the battery per unit of space and weight,

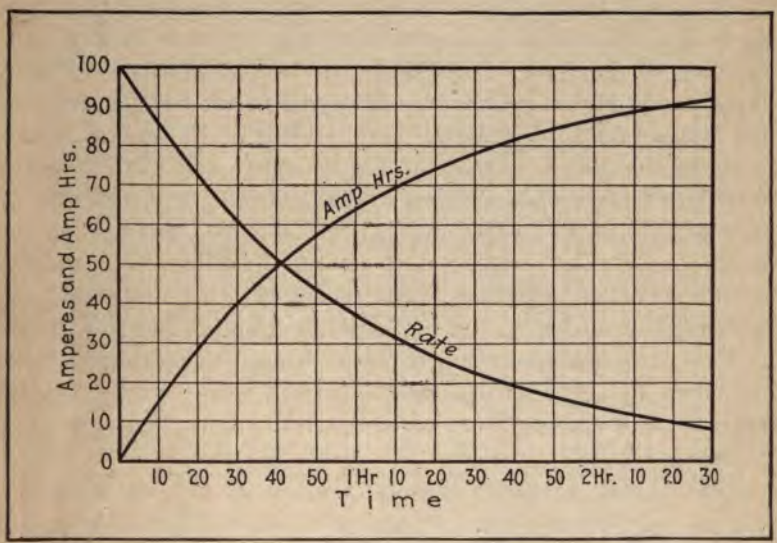


Fig. 52.—Theoretical Variation in Charging Rate When the Rate in Amperes Equals the Ampere-Hours Out of the Battery.

and also in the serviceable life of the battery. There has also been a marked advance in the permissible rates of charge and discharge, which has added so much to the flexibility of operation as to permit the use of much smaller batteries than would have been considered a few years ago in the same service. The following article explains the permissible rates of discharge and the behavior of batteries under operating conditions which a few years ago were considered prohibitive:

It can be safely said that high rates of discharge are in no

way detrimental to modern lead battery plates. Batteries of the vehicle type are in regular operation under conditions in which practically all their work is done at rates which would empty the battery in ten minutes, and the same batteries would be sold to operate at the three-minute rate if there were a commercial demand for such operation. For such high rates of discharge, extra heavy terminals are provided to carry the current, no other changes being required.

It is well known that when discharged *continuously* at a constant rate the available ampere-hour capacity of a battery is a function of the rate of discharge, the available capacity being lower at the higher rates. This reduction in available capacity at the higher rates of discharge is due to depletion of the acid in the pores of the plates. The rate of this depletion is the difference between the rate of absorption by the plates of the acid that is in the pores of the plates and the rate at which this acid is renewed by diffusion with the other acid in the cell. It is the limit of this available acid that limits the capacity of the battery at high rates of discharge, and not any limitation in the plates themselves. It is, therefore, impossible to damage the plates by overdischarge at high discharge rates. In fact, very low rates of discharge should receive more careful consideration than very high rates.

In general, a battery may be charged at any time when a charge will be useful and at any rate which will not cause the temperature of the battery to exceed 110° F. and which will not cause the cells to gas freely except at low rates of charge. If these conditions can be watched no further directions or limitations need to be considered. As it is not always possible to watch these conditions, several methods of charging have been worked out which reduce the amount of attendance required while charging, and which permit the selection of the most economical way to charge the battery under any particular set of local conditions, while assuring that the above limitations will not be exceeded.

A general rule for determining the maximum permissible rate of charging a battery is: The charging rate in amperes must never exceed the ampere-hours out of the battery. Any method of

charging that keeps the charging current within this limit will not overheat the battery or cause it to gas. In applying this rule it is not necessary to reduce the charging rate below the "finishing" rate recommended by the battery manufacturers. If an ampere-hour meter is used on the vehicle, so arranged as to indicate the ampere-hours *out* of the battery, it also indicates at all times the maximum permissible charging rate. It will be noted that the maximum charging rates are no longer a function of the

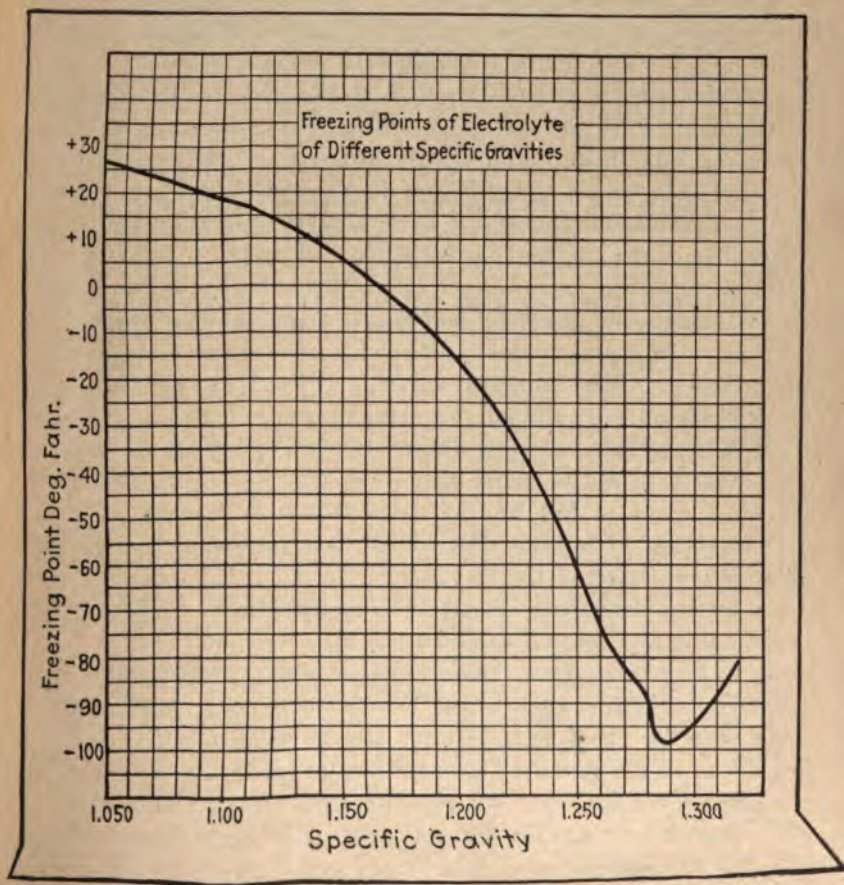


Fig. 53.—**Freezing-Points of Battery Electrolyte.**

size of the battery or its relative state of discharge, but depend only on the actual state of discharge. The curve in Fig. 52 shows in percentage the theoretical variation in charging rate and also in state of charge if a battery were charged strictly in accordance with this rule, and this represents the method by which a battery may be safely charged in a minimum time in regular operation.

It is evident that very wide latitude for proper charging is offered from which to select the best way to charge a battery under any given local conditions. If the vehicle is equipped with an ampere-hour meter the readings of this meter may be taken as the basis for selecting a charging rate which may be used for a particular length of time, so that at the end of that time the charging rate will be at the maximum permissible rate, at which time the rate should, of course, be reduced. It follows from the general rule for charging that, if R = permissible charging rate, D = ampere-hours out of the battery at the start of the charge (reading of the ampere-hour meter) and T = time in hours until the current can be adjusted, then R = D ÷ (+ T) = maximum permissible charging rate for T hours, and at the end of T hours the charging rate will equal the reading of the ampere-hour meter. This value can again be divided by 1 + T for the new charging rate, and so on until the charge can be finished at the finishing rate. If it is desired to charge the battery rapidly, the time T should be taken as short as possible. For convenience Table I, given in Fig. 51, calculated from this formula, is given. This table is of use not only in the charging-room, but also for the determination of the best manner for charging vehicles under any contemplated conditions and for the selection of charging equipment to meet the requirements of these conditions.

Ampere-hour Meter Indications as Basis for Charging: It ould be carefully noted that if an ampere-hour meter is made basis for charging a battery, care must be taken to be sure he meter indicates as nearly as possible the real state of f the battery. An accurate record of the ampere-hours *from a battery* does not give an accurate measure of the *urs necessary* to fully recharge it, for there are certain *ses in the* battery which the ampere-hour meter cannot

measure. In fact, there is no accurate way to predetermine exactly how many ampere-hours charge may be necessary to fully charge a battery, nor is it necessary in ordinary service that the battery be really completely recharged daily. An ordinary clock is not an accurate instrument for measuring time, yet if it is set correctly occasionally it is sufficiently accurate for ordinary purposes. It is the same with an ampere-hour meter. It is necessary that a battery be fully charged occasionally, say, once a week, if the battery is subjected to hard daily use, as on a commercial truck, and this furnishes an opportunity to set the ampere-hour meter.

A battery is fully charged only when all the sulphate has been driven out of the plates into the electrolyte, and this is most easily indicated by the specific gravity of the electrolyte. As long as sulphate is being thrown out of the plates into the electrolyte during charge, the specific gravity of the latter must continue to rise, and when the rise stops the battery is fully charged. Most battery manufacturers recommend that a battery be given such a charge (called an equalizing charge), regardless of the indication of the ampere-hour meter, once a week or once in two weeks. When it is known that the battery is full, the charge is discontinued and then the meter is set to indicate a full battery, and the meter is then a sufficiently accurate indicator of the state of battery charge to be used for a week or two weeks until another equalizing charge is given the battery, when the meter should again be set.

Ampere-hour meters require cleaning and regulation at intervals as does a clock, and if they are treated in this manner they are of great assistance in the proper handling of a battery. These meters are frequently furnished with a contact-making device, so arranged as to interrupt the charging circuit when the meter indicates that the battery is fully charged, and this is a valuable protection again unnecessary charging and gassing of the battery during ordinary operation. This tripping device should, of course, be disconnected during the equalizing charge.

CHAPTER V

Uses of Storage Batteries—Internal Combustion Engine Ignition—Automobile Starting and Lighting Systems—Shifting Gears by Electricity—Electric Pleasure and Commercial Automobiles—Isolated Lighting Plants — Train Lighting — Storage-Battery Locomotives — Battery-Driven Street Cars—Submarine Boats—Miscellaneous Marine Applications—Railway Switch and Signal Service—Stand-by and Booster Service—Drawbridge Operation—Mine Lamp Battery.

Uses of Storage Batteries.—In this chapter the writer intends to describe briefly the most interesting of the many possible applications of storage batteries, some of which are unusual, to say the least. A rather flexible imagination is needed to consider that the cheerfully lighted farm home; the lifting of a massive drawbridge; the roaring start of a powerful automobile or hydroaeroplane engine and the noiseless movement of the electric automobile are all accomplished by the same agency. Storage batteries propel numerous electric launches on the water's surface, and are the sole power for the submarine lurking in its depths. Hundreds of palatial yachts are illuminated by this means, and the penetrating shaft of light from the miner's lamp is produced by the same energizing source. A wireless call for help from a ship in distress, with its life-saving possibilities, is produced from a few cells of a storage battery. The headlights of the myriad automobiles now using our highways after nightfall attest to the practical value of this current-producer.

The magnitude of the industry and the great possibilities of the field for storage batteries can be only briefly touched upon, but it is evident, from a perusal of the following list, that they be used anywhere a dependable source of current is required.

nd storage batteries used in: Central lighting and power
electric railway power houses; municipal and office build-
ng and power; steel mills; electric hoist and elevators;

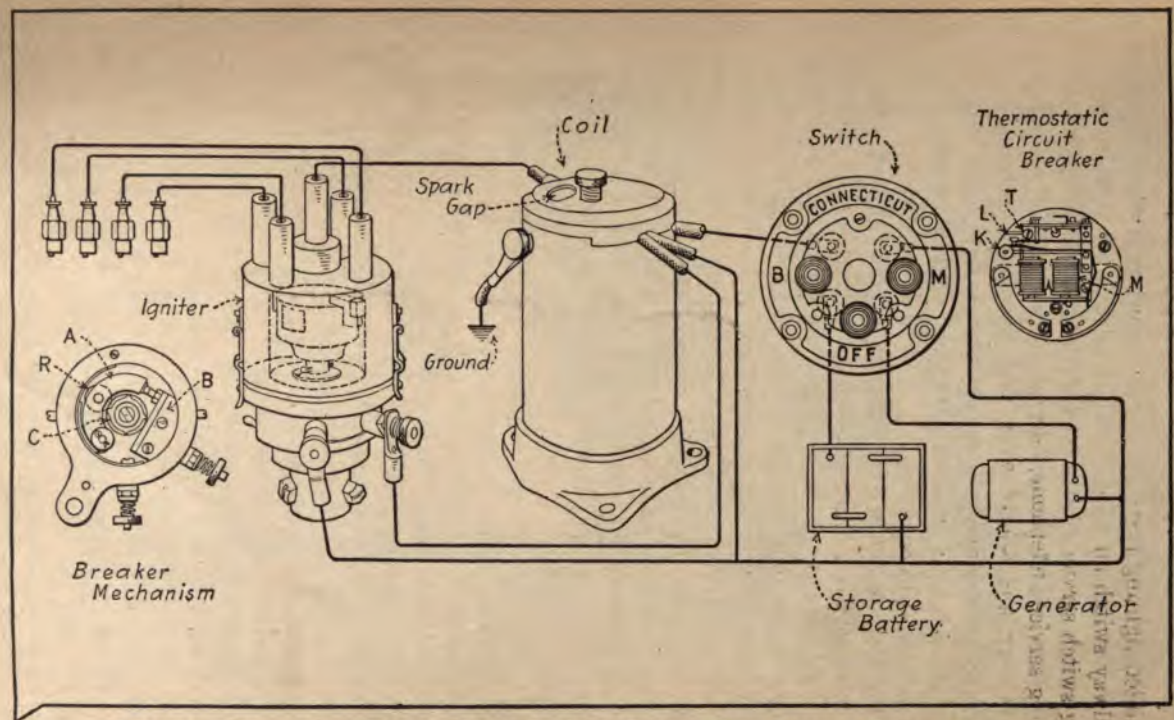


Fig. 54.—Connecticut Closed-Circuit Ignition System Uses Storage-Battery Current.

isolated lighting plants for hotels; suburban residences and farms; railway switch and signal service; railway car lighting; interlocking switch service; United States Government submarine and gun-firing service; telephone, telegraph, wireless and fire-alarm service; laboratory and school work; electroplating; automobile engine-starting; gas-engine ignition; automobile lighting; electric trucks and pleasure cars; street railway cars; electric launches and mine and industrial locomotives.

The Storage Battery for Gasoline-Engine Ignition.—Because of the almost universal employment of electricity for lighting and starting ystems, the battery ignition system has been improved materially, inasmuch as the storage battery supplying the current is constantly charged by a generator. A number of systems have been devised, these operating on two different principles, the open circuit and the closed circuit. An example of the closed-circuit system is shown at Fig. 54, and is of Connecticut design, the complete ignition system consisting of a combined timer and high-tension distributor, a separate induction coil and a switch. The system is distinctive in that the timer is so constructed that the primary circuit of the coil is permitted to become thoroughly saturated with electricity before the points separate, with a result that a spark of maximum intensity is produced. The action is very much the same as that of a magneto on account of the saturation of the winding. Another feature is the incorporation with the switch of a thermostatically operated electro-magnetic device, which automatically breaks the connection between the battery and the coil should the switch be left on with the motor idle.

The contact-breaker mechanism consists of an arm A carrying one contact, a stationary block B carrying the other contact, a fiber roller R, which is carried by the arm A, and operated by oints on the cam C, which is mounted on the driving-shaft. mally, the contacts are held together under the action of a pring. As the four cams, which in touching the roller R arm and separate the contacts, are 90 degrees for a four- otor, the period of saturation of the coil or the length current flows through it to the battery is sufficiently when the points have separated, the current, which

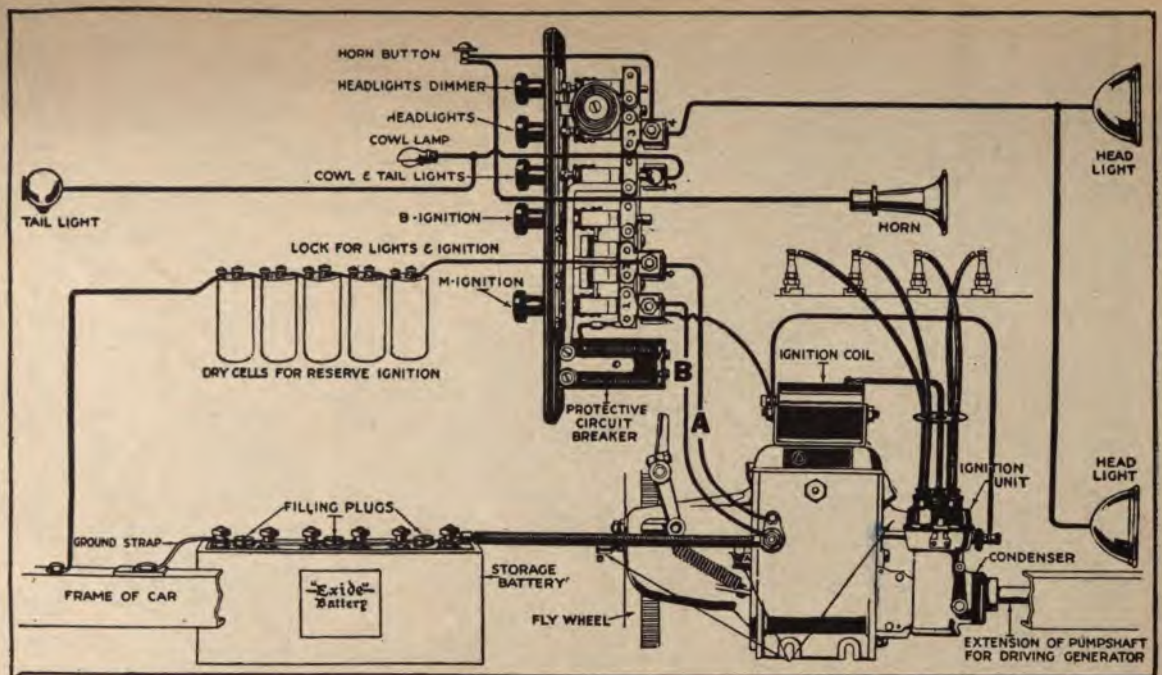


Fig. 55.—The Delco Ignition, Motor-Starting and Car-Lighting System.

has "piled" up, induces an intensely hot spark at the plugs. This is an advantage, inasmuch as it insures prompt starting and regular ignition at low engine speed, as well as providing positive ignition at high engine speed.

The thermostatic circuit-breaking mechanism is very simple. This consists of the thermostat T, which heats when the current passes through it for from thirty seconds to four minutes without interruption, and thus is bent downward, making contact with the contact L. This completes an electrical circuit, which energizes the magnets M, causing the arm K to operate like the clapper in an electric bell. This arm strikes against the plate, which releases whichever of the two buttons in the switch may be depressed.

As will be observed, the transformer coil provided has five terminals. One of these is connected directly with the ground, the other leads to the central secondary distributing brush of the timer-distributor. Of the three primary leads, one goes to the switch, one to the wire leading from the storage battery to the timer, and one directly to a terminal on the timer. The switch is provided with three buttons, the one marked B being depressed to start the engine, as the ignition current is then drawn from the storage battery. After the engine has been started the button marked M is pressed in, this taking the current directly from the generator. To interrupt ignition the button "off" is pressed in, this releasing whichever of the buttons, B or M, is depressed. Four wires run from the distributor section of the igniter to the spark plug.

One of the most popular of the combined starting, lighting and ignition systems is the Delco, which is shown at Fig. 55. For the present we will concern ourselves merely with discussing the ignition functions of the system, leaving the self-starting and electric-lighting features for consideration later. Current is produced by a one-unit type motor-generator, although the windings of the device when operated as a motor or a generator are entirely separate. The ignition current is obtained either from a storage battery, which is kept in a state of charge by the generator, or from a set of dry cells which are carried for reserve ignition. The ignition system consists of a one-unit non-vibrator coil,

sometimes attached to the top of the motor generator, though it may be placed at any convenient part of the car, and a dual automatic distributor and timer usually included as a part of the device as shown. When ignition current is supplied from the lighting circuit the current passes from the storage battery through a switch and out to the low-tension winding of the coil, from whence it passes to the timer and from there to the frame, where it is grounded. The high-tension current generated in the coil runs to the distributor, where it is switched to the spark plug in the different cylinders in turn.

The essential elements of any electrical ignition system, either high or low tension, are: First, a simple and practical method of current production; second, suitable timing apparatus, to cause the spark to occur at the right point in the cycle of engine action; third, suitable wiring and other apparatus to convey the current produced by the generator to the sparking member in the cylinder. The important part the storage battery plays in the gasoline automobile can be readily understood by the reader.

Storage Battery for Starting Automobile Motors.—One of the most recent applications of the storage battery is in starting gasoline engines used in automobiles. The storage battery has made the old hand crank obsolete, and has provided a convenient lighting system as well as a positive motor-starting means. The parts of a two-unit starting and lighting system are shown at Fig. 56. This system is sometimes called a "three-unit" system, on account of having a source of independent current supply for ignition purposes. As will be observed, the generator is driven from the motor crankshaft by silent chain connections, one of the terminals passing through the cut-out device and to the storage battery, the other terminal running directly to the storage-battery terminal, having a short by-pass or shunt wire attached to the cut-out. All the time that the engine is running the generator is delivering electricity to the storage battery.

It will be observed that the storage battery is also coupled to the lighting circuits, which are shown in a group at the right of the *illustration, and to* the electric-starting motor as indicated. *One of the storage* battery terminals is joined directly to the switch

terminal by a suitable conductor, the other goes to one of the terminals on the starting motor, while the remaining terminal of the starting motor goes to the switch. In this system, when the small sliding pinion is meshed with the flywheel gear, the switch is thrown on simultaneously, and the current that flows from the storage battery through the windings of the starting motor rotates the engine crankshaft by means of reduction gears shown. As soon as the engine starts the foot is released and a spring pulls

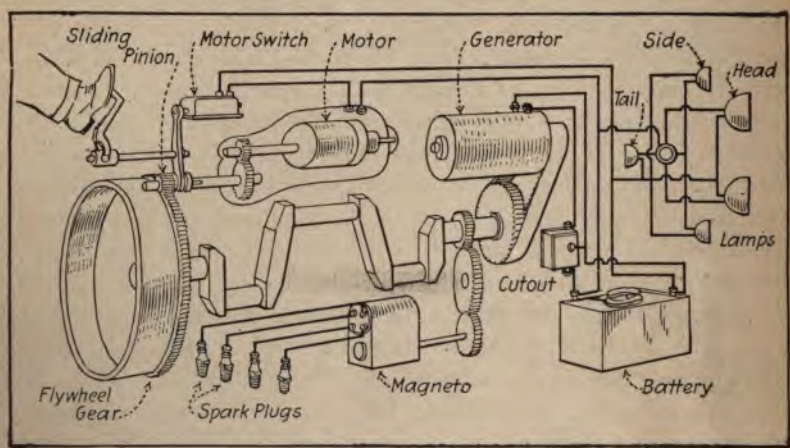


Fig. 56.—Diagram Showing Components of Two-Unit Starting and Lighting System.

the switch out of contact, and also disengages the sliding pinion from the flywheel gear. Electrical starting systems are usually operated on either six- or twelve-volt current, the former being generally favored because the six-volt lamps use heavier filaments than those of high voltage, and are not so likely to break, due to vibration. It is also easier to install a six-volt battery, as this is e standard voltage that has been used for many years for ignition electric lighting purposes before the starting-motors were d.

referring to a system as a one-unit system of lighting, start- *l ignition, one* means that all of these functions are incor- *in one device,* as in the Delco system at Fig. 55. If one

unit is used for generating the lighting and starting current, and also is reversible to act as a motor, but a separate ignition means is provided, such as a high-tension magneto, the system is called a "two-unit" system. The same designation applies to a system when the current generating and ignition functions are performed by one appliance, and where a separate starting-motor is used. The three-unit system is that in which a magneto is employed for ignition, a generator for supplying the lighting and starting current, and a motor for turning over the engine crankshaft.

The generator, as is apparent from its name, is utilized for producing current. This is usually a miniature dynamo patterned largely after those that have received wide application for generating current for electric lighting of our homes and factories. The generators of the different systems vary in construction. Some have a permanent magnetic field, while others have an excited field. In the former case permanent horseshoe magnets are used, as in a magneto. In the other construction the field magnets, as well as the armature, are wound with coils of wire. In all cases the dynamo or generator should be mechanically driven from the engine crankshaft, either by means of a direct drive, by silent chain, or through the medium of the timing or magneto-operating gears. Belts are apt to slip and are not reliable.

All the current produced by the generator and not utilized by the various current-consuming units, such as the lamps, ignition system, electric horn, etc., is accumulated or stored in the storage battery, and kept in reserve for starting or lighting when the engine is not running or for lighting and ignition when the car is being run at such low speed that the generator is not supplying current. Storage batteries used in starting systems must be of special design in order to stand the high discharge and to perform efficiently under the severe vibration and operating conditions incidental to automobile service. The storage battery may be installed on the running-board of the automobile, under the body, or under the front or rear seat, the location depending upon the design of the car and the degree of accessibility desired, as shown at Fig. 57. The best practice is to set the storage battery in a *substantial carrying case* held by rigid braces attached to the frame

side and cross members. If the battery should be set under the tonneau floor boards, a door must be provided in these to give ready access to the battery.

The starting-motor, which takes the place of the common hand-crank, is operated by current from the storage battery, and the

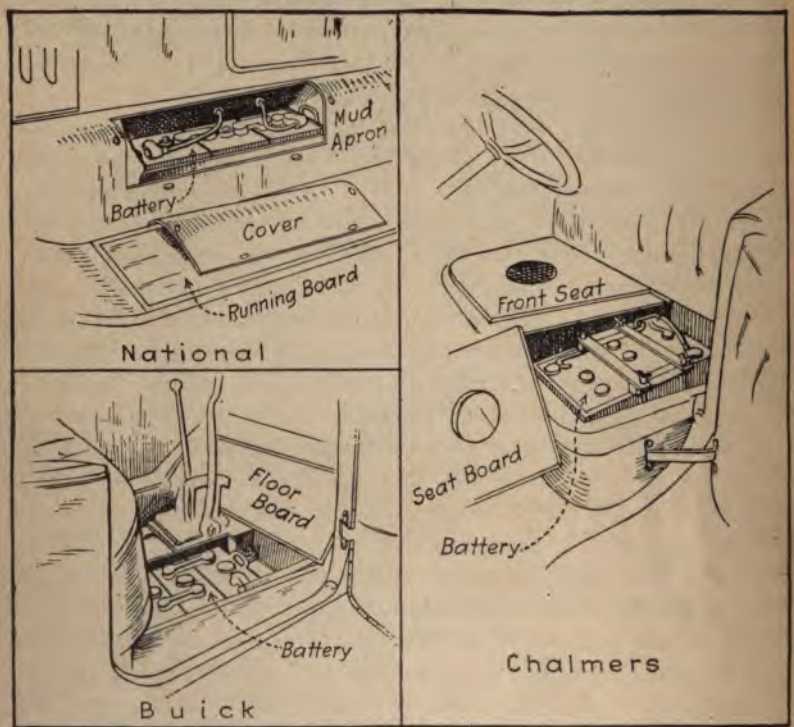


Fig. 57.—How Storage Batteries are Installed in an Automobile When Used for Starting and Lighting Current.

high-speed armature rotation is reduced to the proper cranking speed by reduction gears of the different forms, to be described in roper sequence. The construction of the starting-motor is prac-ılly the same as that of the dynamo, and it operates on the same *ıciple, except* that one instrument is a reversal of the other. *n order to secure* automatic operation of a lighting and start-

ing system several mechanical and electrical controls are needed, these including the circuit breaker, the governor, which may be either mechanical or electrical, and the operating switches. The circuit breaker is a device to retain current in the storage battery under such conditions that the battery current is stronger than that delivered from the generator. If no circuit breaker was provided the storage battery could discharge back through the generator winding. The circuit breaker is sometimes called a "cutout." The circuit breaker is usually operated by an electro-magnet, and may be located either on the generator itself or any other convenient place on the car, though in many cases the circuit breakers are usually mounted on the back of the dashboard. This device is absolutely automatic in action and requires but little attention.

The governors are intended to prevent an excessive output of current from the generator when the engine runs at extremely high speed. Two types are used: one mechanical, operated by centrifugal force, and the other electrical. The former is usually a friction-drive mechanism mounted on the generator shaft, which automatically limits the speed of the dynamo armature to a definite predetermined number of revolutions per minute. The maximum current output is thus held to the required amount independently of the speed at which the car is being driven. The use of this device minimizes the possibility of overheating the generator overcharging the battery at high car speeds. The electrical system of governing does not affect the speed of the armature, but controls the output of the generator by means of armature reaction and a reversed series field winding. The governors usually permit a maximum generator output of from ten to twelve amperes, though the normal charging current is less than this figure.

In practically all systems an amperemeter is mounted on the dash so that it can be readily inspected by the driver, this indicating at all times the amount of current being produced by the dynamo or drawn from the battery. If the indicating needle of the amperemeter points to the left of the zero point on the scale, it means that the battery is furnishing current to the lights or other *current-consuming* units or discharging. When the needle *points to the other side* of the scale, it means that the generator

is delivering current to the battery which is charging it; the amount of charge or discharge at any time can be read from the scale on the face of the amperemeter. Some of these instruments have the words "charge" and "discharge" under the scale in order to enable the operator to read the instrument correctly.

Another important element is the lighting switch, which is

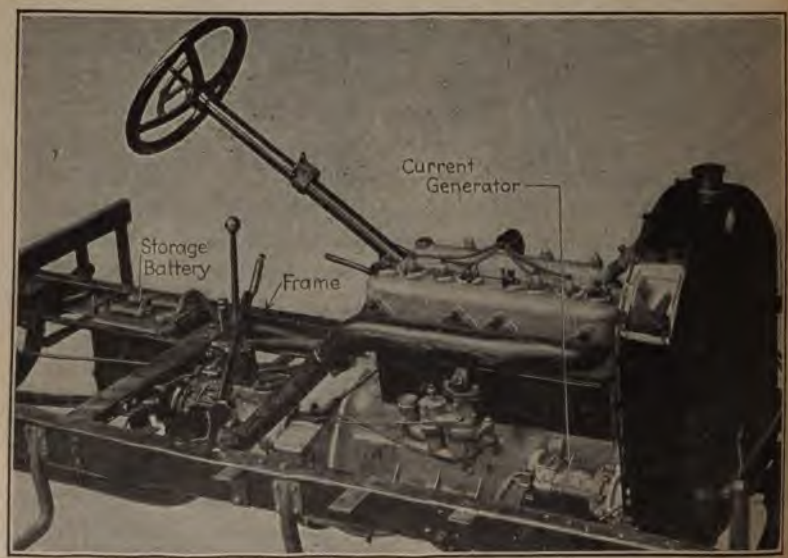


Fig. 58.—Method of Installing Starting and Lighting Battery in Automobile Frame.

usually mounted at some point within convenient reach of the car driver. This is often placed on an instrument board on the back of the cowl in connection with other registering instruments. As ordinarily constructed, the switches are made up of a number of units, and the wiring is such that the head, side and tail lamps may be controlled independently of each other. For simplicity and convenience of installation, the switch is usually arranged so that all circuits are wired to parallel connecting members, or *"busbars," placed* at the rear of the switch.

APPROXIMATE CURRENT FOR LAMPS

Voltage of Lamps	Amperes per Candle Power in Tungsten Lamps	
	Head or Other Large Lamps	Side, Tail or Other Small Lamps
6	0.17	0.21
8	0.125	0.16
12	0.085	0.1

AMPERE-HOUR CAPACITY

Capacity at Normal Temperature of "Exide" Type LX and SX Cells when Discharged Continuously at Rates Required for Ordinary Lighting and Ignition Service.

	Size of Cell					
	LX-5	LX-9	LX-13	LX-17	SX-9	SX-13
Ampere Hours in Ignition Service	50	100	150	200	80	120
Ampere Hours when Discharged intermittently for Lighting*	40	80	120	160	64	96
Ampere Hours at 1 Ampere Rate	39	86½	136	186	68	109
Ampere Hours at 1½ Ampere Rate	36½	81½	130	180	64	102
Ampere Hours at 3 Ampere Rate	32	73	118	164	57	91
Ampere Hours at 5 Ampere Rate	28	66	108	151	51	84
Ampere Hours at 7½ Ampere Rate	25	60½	100	141	46	77
Ampere Hours at 10 Ampere Rate	23	56	94	133	43	73

* This capacity may be obtained by intermittent discharges of a few hours each during a period of three days or more.

desired. The first movement is the regular operation of the clutch, but a continued operation of the clutch lever actuates the knife switch.

Current flows from the battery through the solenoid coil and pulls a plunger against a magnet with a force which is given as

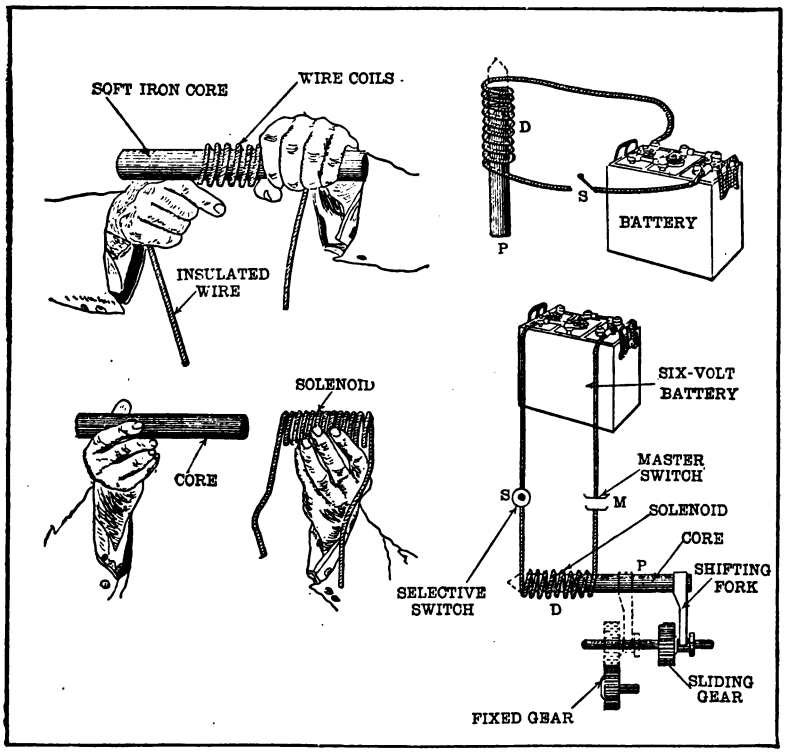


Fig. 60.—Simplified Diagrams Showing How Current Passed Through the Solenoid Will Draw in Iron Core Piece, Which May be Made to Shift the Gears.

40 to 100 pounds. This energy is transmitted through an arm to the gear-shifting fork and gear in exactly the same manner as if the gears were operated with a hand lever. The plungers are normally in a neutral position. When the button is pressed on the control member, current passes through the coil around one of the plungers, drawing it against the magnet. It is said that

the current required to make the shift is about 17 amperes, and it is claimed, further, that three hundred speed changes may be made with less current consumption than is required in starting the motor with an electric-starting device. An advantage claimed for this electric gearshift is that the gears cannot be stripped, for the reason that the clutch must be disengaged before a shift can be made, and the gears are always in neutral before the coils can accomplish the change.

Batteries for Electric Automobiles.—Any practical form of storage battery may be used for automobile propulsion. Either the Edison or lead-plate type batteries prove satisfactory for this work. The lead-plate forms have thin plates to keep the weight down and make for quicker charging and discharging. The usual discharge rate is about two volts per cell, the amperage depending upon the resistance to vehicle motion. It is said that the annual maintenance cost of the ordinary lead-plate cell is about 60 per cent. of its original cost. A special vehicle type, called the "Iron Clad" (previously described), will cost about 30 per cent. of its initial purchase price annually to maintain it in proper condition. The Edison battery occupies about one-third more space

Fig. 61.—Electrically **Propelled Taxicab, Having Part of Storage** *Battery* **Under Hood and Part Under Rear Seat.**

than a lead-plate battery of equal capacity, and costs about two and one-half times as much, but it is said to retain its full capacity for three or four years. The lead-plate type will deliver about 10 watt-hours per pound weight; an Edison battery will give nearly 14 watt-hours per pound.

The usual number of lead-plate cells provided to charge from a 110-volt circuit is forty-two or forty-four, having 11, 13 or 15 high-capacity plates per cell, while sixty-cell Edison batteries are

Fig. 62.—Industrial Truck, Using Battery Power at A. High-Speed Electric Roadster Automobile at B.

supplied to meet the same conditions. The battery weight of the average electric vehicle is about 35 per cent. of the total unloaded weight. In order to insure a rate of discharge that will not injure the batteries, electric vehicles are usually geared for moderate speeds, seldom more than 18 to 20 miles per hour for pleasure or passenger-carrying cars on pneumatic tires. Heavy trucks seldom run faster than 6 miles; medium-capacity commercial vehicles may run 10 or 12 miles per hour. A number of electric vehicle-makers have adopted a 24-cell battery, using motors wound for about 48 volts.

The motors used are almost always of the series-wound type, because they provide more power for starting. The usual pleasure-car size is a motor of 2 k.w. rating, or about 2¾ horsepower. Vehicle motors have an overload capacity of 200 to 300 per cent., though, of course, this is practical for only relatively short periods of operation. The speeds are controlled by different combinations of the motor *field* windings.

In some electric vehicles the various car speeds were obtained by parallel and series parallel combinations of the battery cells. From four to six forward speeds are generally provided, a simple reversing arrangement making it possible to have the same number of reverse speeds if necessary, though this is not always done. Another scheme of control is to have the motor field windings or coils so wired that they may be put in series or in parallel groups. A resistance is used in securing the first speed with the field coils in series. The second speed is obtained by cutting out the resistance and leaving the fields in series. Third speed is obtained by shunting the resistance across the fields, which are still in series. The fourth speed is obtained by leaving the field coils in parallel connection and with resistance out, the fifth speed by shunting the resistance in with the parallel connected fields. The parallel connection gives greater speed, the series field connection more pulling power.

Electric motors for electric trucks usually have about one kilo- capacity per ton load added, the minimum being 2 k.w. on -ton truck; thus a two-ton truck will need a 3 k.w. motor, a on truck 4 k.w., and 5 k.w. for a five-ton vehicle. The usual

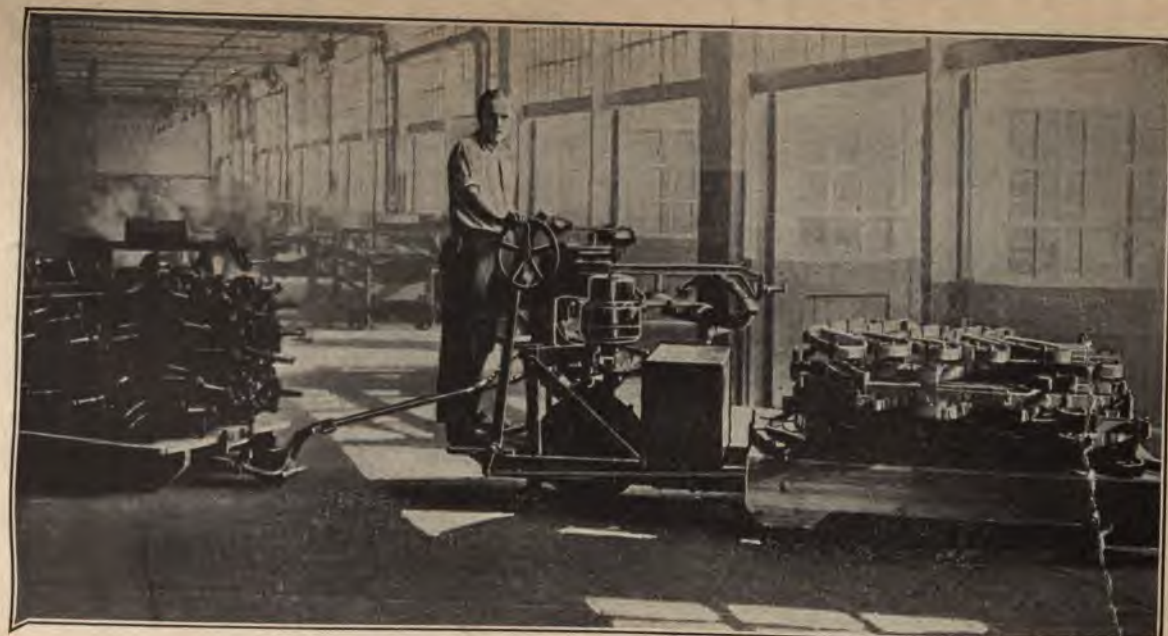


Fig. 63.—Industrial Truck for Factory Work Propelled by Storage Battery.

range on good roads is about 40 miles for a truck and 75 to 100 miles for pleasure cars on one battery charge. Vehicle batteries are generally carried in hard rubber jars and are nearly always of the sealed type on account of the liability of splashing the electrolyte when the car is operated over ordinary highways. The cells are grouped in trays for easy handling, and all connections and couplings, terminals and battery straps are of unusually rugged design.

The present tendency in lead-battery design seems to be toward the use of more thin plates, as fifteen are furnished as a standard equipment more often than a smaller number. Such an equipment will give 180 ampere-hours, and in some types may develop fully 200 ampere-hours. The reasons for the increasing adoption of the thin-plate lead battery are, first, an augmenting demand for more speed and greater range of action per charge, and secondly, a realization on the battery-maker's part that the life of a thin plate is equal to that of the heavier ones if the installation is properly made. One standard jar size now being produced will work with from 11 to 15 plates. The high-ribbed type of jar is used, having at least three inches below the bottom of the plates for sediment space, this reducing the amount of washing and necessary cleaning out of the cells. The jars are assembled side to side in trays, with the plate surfaces set at right angles to the direction of car movement. One row of cells is mounted in each tray, these being set lengthwise in the battery compartment. This arrangement is said to reduce jar breakage.

Isolated Lighting Plants.—Many makers of storage batteries have developed types for use in residence and factory lighting where central station power is not available. The advantages of electricity for the supply of light, heat and power have led to a demand for the satisfactory and economical operation of isolated plants. The marvelous development of the internal combustion s, gasoline or kerosene engine and the improvements in the vari- forms of lamps have created an active interest in the appli- of the storage battery to isolated plants of moderate size, *being recognized* where uninterrupted twenty-four-hour *is desired* a storage battery is an absolute necessity. Use-

Fig. 64.—Electrically Propelled Truck, With Battery Compartment Under Driver's Seat.

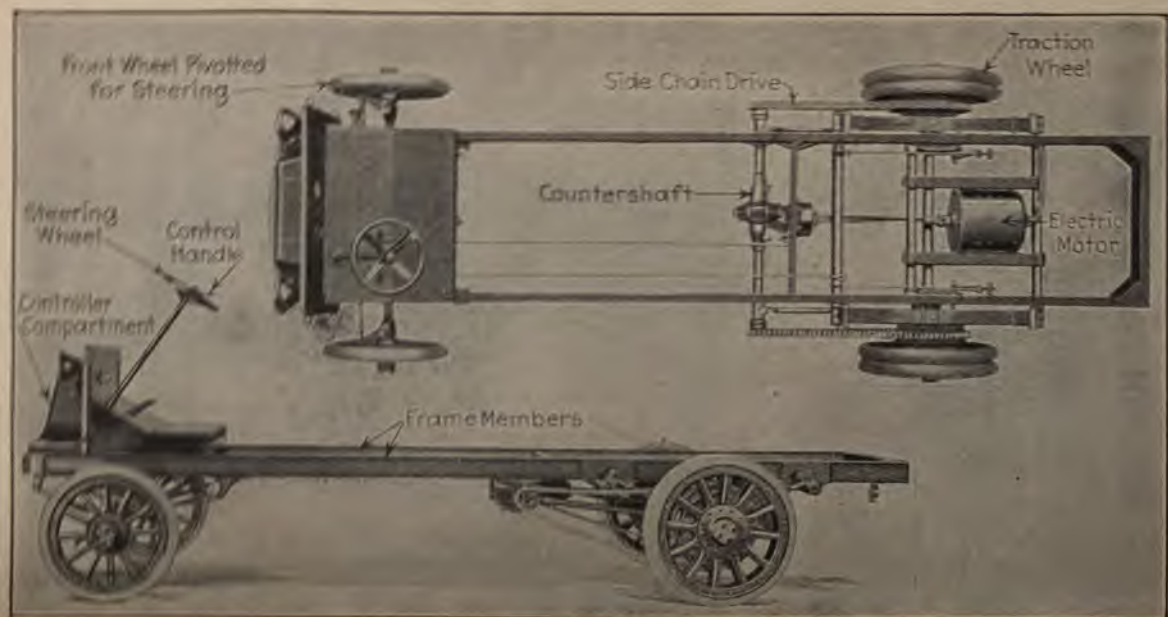


Fig. 65.—Plan and Side Views of Electric Truck Chassis, With Battery Box Removed, Showing Simplicity of Mechanism.

ally in isolated plants the engine and generator capacity is sufficient for the total number of lamps connected, although they are all seldom in use at one time, consequently the plant operates at but partial load during the total lighting hours. This means low efficiency, poor regulation and high fuel costs. The installation of a storage battery corrects this weakness by permitting the operation of the generator at the full or the most economical load for

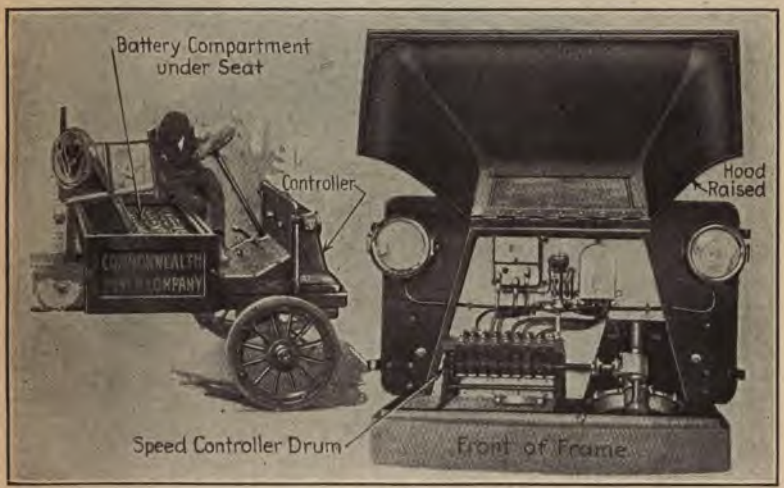


Fig. 66.—View at Left Shows Battery Location; at Right the Controller Compartment is Opened to Show Accessibility of Wiring.

a few hours and then shutting down entirely, the battery providing the current for the balance of the time.

In many cases it can be so arranged that the generator need be operated only every second or third day, and then at the most convenient time. No additional labor is required; in fact, this cost is usually lessened, while the fuel cost and maintenance and repair expense are much reduced. By taking current directly from the battery, steady lights are obtained and the noises of engine at night avoided. When on special occasions unusual lighting is required, the battery may be discharged in parallel with generator, and demands equal to the combined capacity of battery and

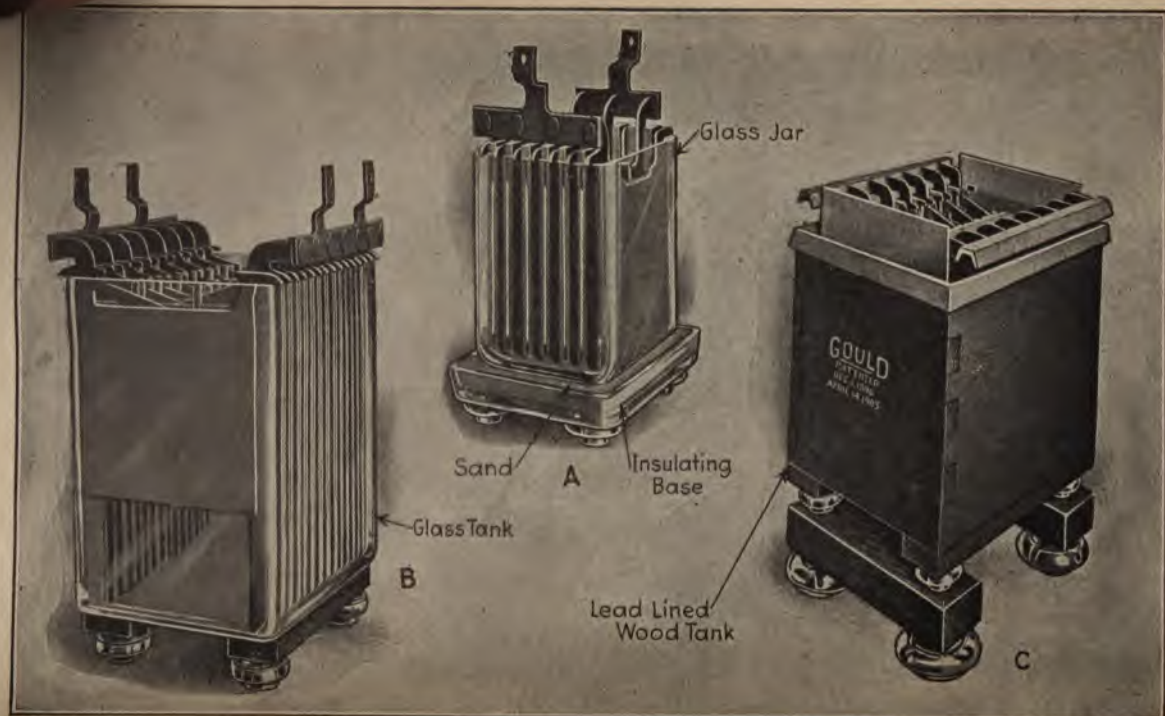


Fig. 67.—Types of Gould Storage Batteries for Isolated Lighting Plants.

generator may be supplied. The generating equipment may be stopped at any time for adjustment or repair without interrupting the service, the battery being available for unexpected demands for power. The great advantage of electric current for operating pumps and other machinery at a distance from the engine and generator cannot be overestimated. The employment of electricity for driving fans, heating curling-irons, cooking, etc., is also of great convenience, and by installing batteries current is available at all times.

The following rules for battery selection and methods of installation and operation are reproduced from a bulletin issued by the Gould Storage Battery Company, describing batteries for isolated lighting plant use.

Selection of Battery.—The number of cells is determined by the voltage of the system and is entirely independent of the size of the individual cells.

Isolated plants of the various voltages require batteries of the number of cells given in the following table:

Voltage of System	Number of Cells	Voltage of System	Number of Cells
110	60	220	120
115	64	230	126
125	70	250	138

The size of the individual cells is determined by the number of lamps, their candle-power and efficiency, and the length of time they must be supplied on one discharge. For ordinary purposes it is sufficiently accurate to estimate the energy taken by a 16-candle-power carbon filament lamp as 55 watts (110-volt, 16-candle-power lamp taking one-half ampere) and lamps of other candle-power on a proportionate basis. By using tungsten filament or nitrogen-filled bulbs, the current consumption may be materially reduced for a given candle-power, and outfits of lower voltage will give satisfactory light. For example, a recently developed, small-capacity lighting outfit for farm use uses but 16 *cells of battery by* operating 30-volt tungsten filament lamps. *To simplify figuring,* we will consider a voltage that is in com-

mon use in places where a central station furnishes power or 110 volts.

Storage batteries are rated in "ampere-hours," which defines their capacity and is the product of the number of amperes discharge and the number of hours such discharge can continue. The capacity at the eight-hour rate is considered the normal. As the ampere discharge is increased above the normal or eight-hour rate, the ampere-hour capacity decreases, as will be seen by the following example:

Rate, Hours	Ampere Discharge	Capacity Ampere Hours
8	12½	100
5	17½	87½
3	25	75
1	50	50

Thus, while 12½ amperes may be obtained for eight hours, or 100 ampere-hours, if the discharge be made at 25 amperes it can be continued for but three hours, or 75 ampere-hours; the remaining capacity of the battery is, however, available at a lower rate. On discharge at less than the eight-hour rate, the capacity of the battery is slightly greater, but the increase is small, and for ordinary calculation it is best to consider the capacity at rates lower than the eight-hour, the same as the eight-hour capacity.

The size of a 110-volt battery can be approximately determined by the method outlined in the following example, the conditions being that the battery will be charged at any time during the day convenient to operate the generator, and that the battery will be able to furnish current for lamps according to the following schedule:

Time	Number of Lamps	Amperes	Number of Hours	Amperes Hours
10 P.M.	Twenty 16 c. p.	10	5	50
6 A.M.	Two 8 c. p.	½	8	4
8 A.M.	Six 16 c. p.	3	2	6
				60

The last discharge rate is three amperes, and there will be required a battery of sufficient size to furnish 60 ampere-hours at a three-ampere rate. This being less than the eight-hour rate, we require a battery having a normal rating of 60 ampere-hours. By referring to the tables given in the Gould catalog it will be seen that Type M-307 will give 7.5 amperes for eight hours, or 60 ampere-hours at normal rating. Battery required, 60 cells, Gould Type M-307.

The above example shows a condition where the full normal capacity of the battery is used in carrying the load. Under some conditions this is not possible, i. e., where the latter part of the discharge is at a high rate; and it is advised that the battery company check the size of battery before the final decision.

Methods of Operation.—The principal function of a storage battery in small plants being the furnishing of current for a considerable period of time, such as the night load of a residential plant, the operation of the battery consists of cycles of charge and discharge covering practically the capacity of the battery. The problem of operation, therefore, resolves itself into two parts:

First—*Voltage control during discharge:* Under ordinary operating conditions, it is desirable to maintain practically constant voltage on the lighting circuits—hence, as the voltage of a storage battery varies during discharge, various methods have been developed to compensate for the changes in the battery voltage. A fully charged battery which, standing idle, shows about 2.1 volts per cell, will show while discharging at the eight-hour rate about 1.8 volts at the latter part of the discharge, and somewhat less at higher discharge rates. For isolated plants one of the following methods is usually employed: (A) Resistance control. (B) End-cell control.

Second—*Control of charging current:* To fully charge a battery it is necessary to raise the voltage, as the charge proceeds, from about 2.2 volts at start to approximately 2.62 volts per cell at the completion of the charge. This is usually accomplished in one of the following ways: (A) Normal voltage charge. Resistance control. (B) High-voltage charge directly from generator. *(C) Shunt-booster charge.*

As the selection of a proper lighting battery should not be undertaken without consulting the battery maker, any reader wishing more involved, technical explanation of any of the methods described can obtain same by consulting the engineers of whatever battery maker he may select. Typical lighting batteries of Gould manufacture are shown in Fig. 67, which outlines the construction of the glass jar, glass tank and wood-tank types.

Details of Installation.—Gould storage batteries for light and

Fig. 68.—Typical Isolated Lighting Battery for Medium-Capacity Plant.

power plants are usually installed either in glass jars, glass tanks or lead-lined wooden tanks. The smaller type of cells are installed in glass jars resting on a bed of sand contained in a glass or wooden sand tray. The sand tray is supported by four glass insulators placed under the corners of the tray. Cells of medium pacity are usually installed in tanks of pressed glass, no sand ys being used, the glass tank resting on the glass insulators *separated* therefrom by a small cushion of either lead or rub- *keep the* hard surfaces out of contact. Cells of the glass

jar (or glass tank) type are the easiest to install, as the plates are grouped at the factory. The plates of each cell are burned to common cross-bars and terminal straps, the negative plate to one cross-bar and the positive to the other, forming respectively the negative and positive "groups." The two groups with separators form what is known as the "element." The cells of the glass jar types are joined by bolting the lead terminal straps together by means of lead-covered brass bolts.

Lead-lined wooden tanks are often used for plants of medium size and always for those of large size. Plates of this type of cell are grouped at the place of installation by "lead-burning" the positive plates of one cell and the negative plates of the adjoining cell to a common busbar. All types of cells are usually installed with the supporting insulators resting on wooden stringers, these stringers having been previously painted with two or three coats of acid-proof paint. Cells of the smaller types which are not too heavy are generally installed on two-tier wooden racks in order to save floor space. The larger cells are installed in one tier, the wooden stringers being supported by vitrified brick set upon the floor or by another set of glass insulators resting on vitrified tiles. A typical installation of glass jar cells joined to form a medium-capacity battery is illustrated at Fig. 68. In this, the battery is in a special room prepared for it, and the cells rest on wooden stringers, as previously described.

Switchboard and Fittings.—It will be evident that the switchboard is an important detail of the storage battery lighting plant. The Type E switchboard used with some of the Electric Storage Battery Company outfits is shown at Fig. 69, the view at the right showing the face of the switchboard, while that at the left shows the method of installing the switchboard in connection with the battery supporting platform. The electric-current generator can also be fastened to the platform and belt-driven from the internal-combustion engine ordinarily used as power. In one corner, the ampere-hour meter dial is shown as an inset. Its use will be more fully described in proper sequence. The switchboard illustrated is utilized in connection with low-voltage house-lighting plants, *and is simple, yet complete.* The general arrangement has been

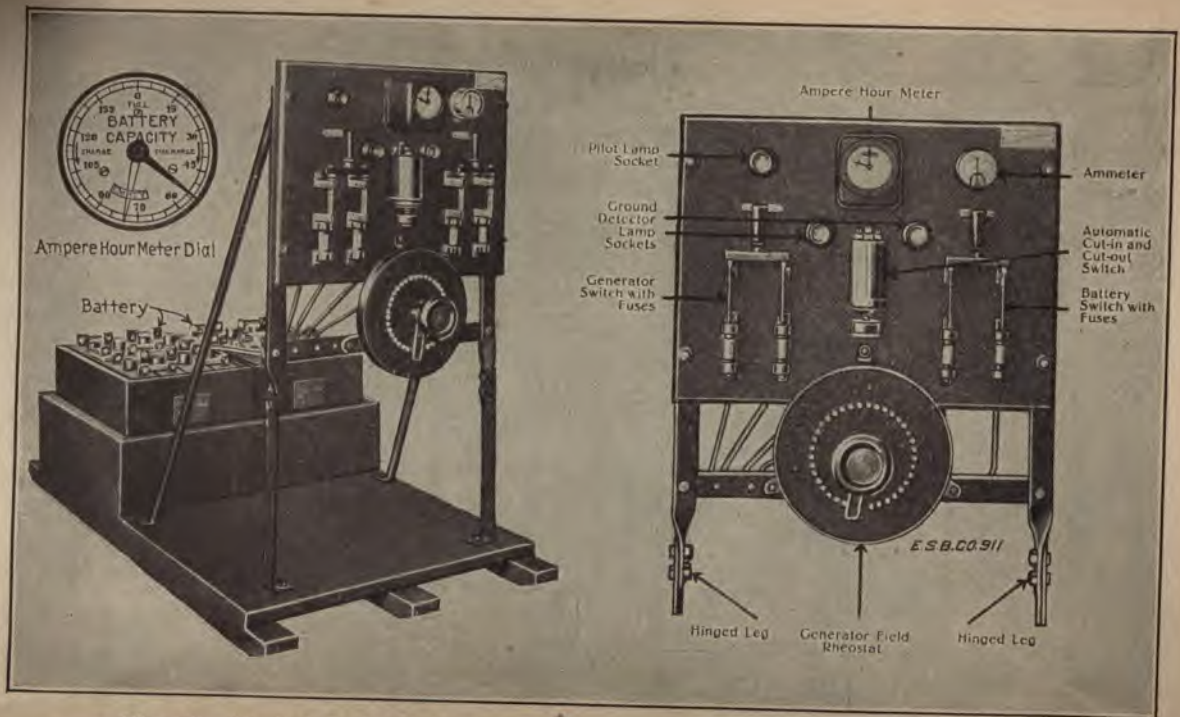


Fig. 69.—Typical Isolated Lighting-Plant Switchboard, Showing Fittings Needed.

worked out with great care by competent engineers who are thoroughly conversant with small-plant switchboard requirements as the result of experience gained in the installation and operation of great numbers of such plants.

The arrangement permits:

1. Lights to be run from battery only, or

2. Lights to be run from generator while generator is also charging the battery, or

3. Lights to be run from generator and battery in parallel, the battery assisting the generator, or

4. Lights to be run from generator only.

In the ordinary operation of the plant, no hand manipulation of switches or any part of the switchboard apparatus is at any time necessary except adjustment of the generator current by means of the generator field rheostat. Hand manipulation of switches is superseded by the automatic operations of the automatic cut-in and cut-out switch. This switch is simple, durable and reliable. It has no adjustments, because it needs none. Made in two sizes: 30-ampere, 32-42 volts, and 60-ampere, 32-42 volts. Panel of black oil-finished slate, 1 x 23¼ x 18 inches, on heavy strap-iron frame. Generator and battery switches are double-pole, single-throw, with enclosed fuses. Ampere-hour meter connected in battery discharge and charge circuit. Ammeter connected in battery discharge and charge circuit. Pilot-light socket connected across generator leads. Automatic switch connected in generator circuit, automatically closes generator circuit to line when generator voltage rises to proper value, and opens on small reverse current. Generator field rheostat furnished only as extra and to purchaser's specifications. Standard board includes provision for mounting front of board type of rheostat. Ground-detector lamp sockets for testing for grounds.

Utility of Ampere-Hour Meter.—The ampere-hour meter, which is a feature of these switchboards, is of great practical value. It is to the storage battery what a tank gauge is to a water tank. It indicates at all times the current in ampere-hours taken out of *the battery. The* hand moves from "Full" toward "Empty" when *the battery is* discharging, and from "Empty" toward "Full" when

Fig. 70.—Showing Adaptability of Electric Lighting From an Isolated Plant for Farm Use.

the battery is charging. It is arranged to run somewhat slow on charge, and thus automatically provides for the necessary excess of ampere-hours of charge over ampere-hours of discharge. It is provided with a contact at the "Full" point, of which use may be made to light a lamp or ring a bell when the meter hand reaches that point, or to actuate a circuit-opening device in the

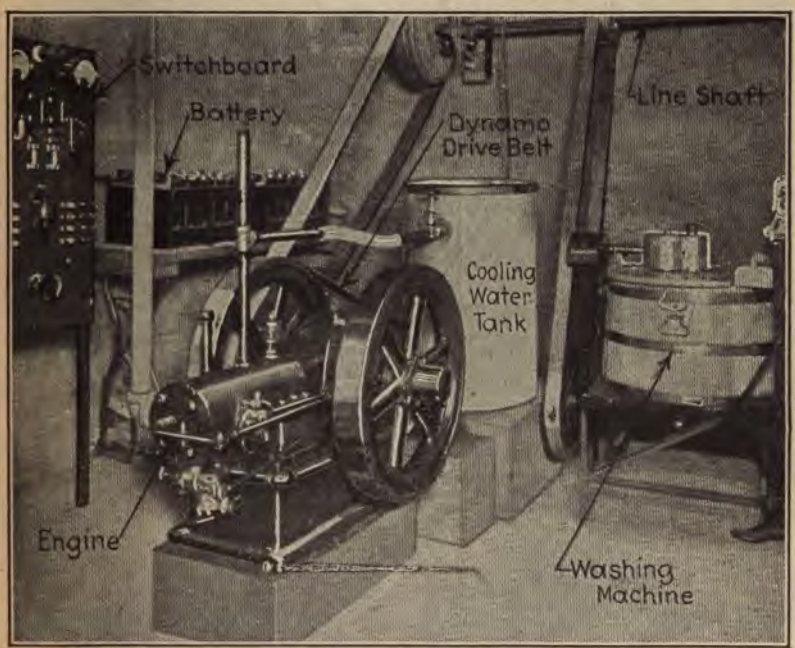


Fig. 71.—Isolated Lighting Plant Installed in House Basement Using Edison Battery. Engine Power is Used to Drive Water Pump, Washing Machine and Other Domestic Machinery.

engine ignition circuit, shutting the engine down when the hand reaches the "Full" point. The ampere-hour meter is used:

1. To show when the battery needs to be charged.

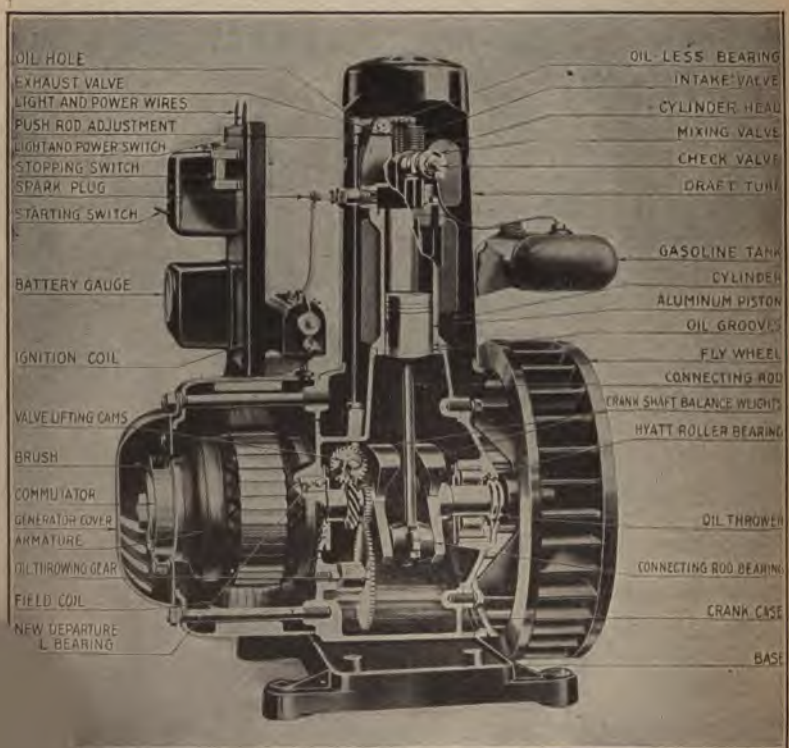
2. While charging, to show at what rate the charging may be done, permitting the use of relatively high charging rates and thus shortening very *materially* the hours of engine operation for *battery-charging* purposes.

3. To show when the battery has been fully charged and charging may be discontinued.

4. As a positive safeguard (if the simple instructions are followed) against useless, wasteful and injurious overcharging or overdischarging of the battery.

5. As a continual and valuable check on the battery performance, and therefore on battery conditions.

6. To measure the daily or weekly current consumption, or the current used by flatirons, motors or other devices using current intermittently in the performance of some specific task, and to



72.—Sectional View of Delco-Lite Gasoline Motor and Dynamo, *Showing All Parts* of Power-Producing and Current-Generating Units.

obtain other data of like character, which are helpful in operating the plant with economy, in preventing the waste of current, etc.

7. To give, when such is desired, a signal by light or bell, that the battery charge has been completed and should be discontinued, or to actuate a stop-charge device.

Delco-Lite Outfit.—The system shown at Figs. 72 and 73 was developed by one of the largest producers of lighting systems for automobiles, and incorporates many of the features of simplicity and ease of operation that have been essential in automobile work. This combined, compact unit consists of a gasoline engine, a dynamo and a switchboard. It weighs about 325 pounds, exclusive of the storage batteries, which are furnished as a part of the outfit. It is a compact plant that will deliver 750 watts. It is a low-voltage system—32 volts—as this saves battery expense; at the same time it is of sufficient voltage to operate light machinery efficiently. It is now possible to purchase almost anywhere standard motors and lighting fixtures for this voltage. There is not the slightest danger in handling this low voltage.

The gasoline engine is of the air-cooled type, so there is no danger of freezing, no matter where the outfit may be located. It is self-starting. All that is required is to close the switch, which starts the engine. It automatically cuts off when the batteries are charged.

The batteries are of the sealed glass-jar type, especially built for use with this outfit, and come fully charged. It is said that they will not freeze at 20 degrees below zero, even when completely discharged. Extra large space is provided for electrolyte or liquid, and they are long-lived.

Any number of lights may be installed, up to 50 or 60. The average place, however, burns only a few of these at any one time. When the engine is running it will carry thirty-two 20-watt lights continuously. The storage battery alone will carry fifteen 20-watt lights for eight hours. Of course, increased storage capacity can be provided. The batteries constitute a reserve source of energy, providing current that may be used when a light is turned on or if some light machinery be operated, such as the churn, washing-machine, cream separator or vacuum cleaner. The engine need

only be run at intervals of perhaps once or twice a week, depending upon the amount of current used. The claim is made that the average farm can be lighted for less than five cents per day. This is less than half the rate in most cities.

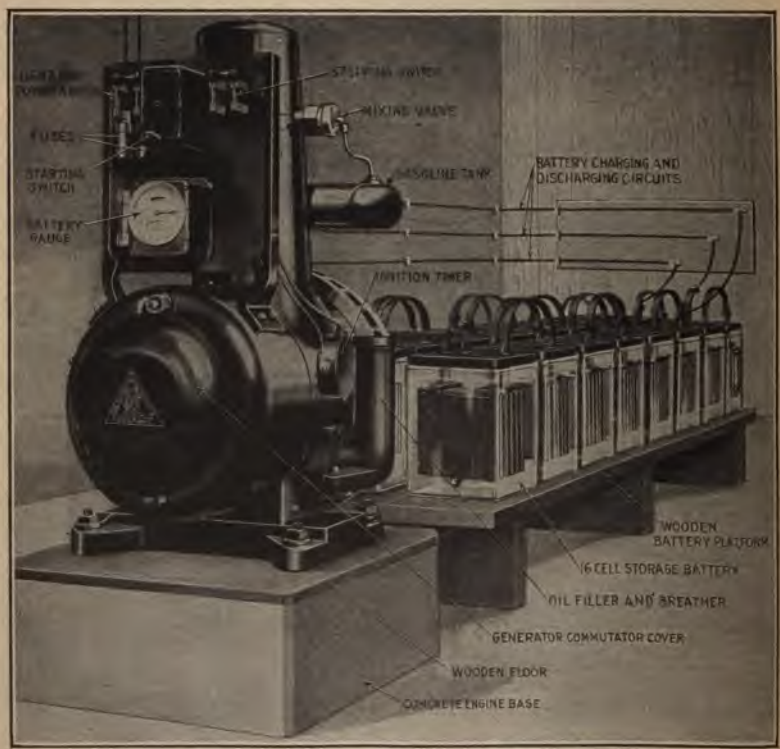


Fig. 73.—How the Delco-Lite Generating Outfit is Coupled to the Storage Battery.

Storage Batteries in Electric Train Lighting.—The development of practical train lighting by electricity was a great step forward, and its advantages were thoroughly appreciated by the public. Electric light contributes to the safety of the traveling public, as it lowers the fire risk present with either oil lamps or *gas flames*. Any practical storage cell may be used for train-

lighting service, as satisfactory installations have been made with either the lead-plate or Edison batteries. This service is not exceptionally severe, as an examination of some lead-plate batteries with a record of 500,000 car miles during a period of three years showed that the jars contained but one inch of sediment, and plates were in excellent condition. The results point to a normal life of

Fig. 74.—Edison Storage Battery for Train Lighting, Showing Arrangement of Cells in Trays of Three, to Facilitate Handling.

ten years with but one intermediate cleaning. The batteries used are very similar in general construction to those intended for use in electric vehicles, and are installed in trays for ready handling. The illustrations at Fig. 74 show the application of the Edison cell to this service and the method of grouping the cells to form a battery. The location of the battery compartment on the car and accessibility of the battery trays are clearly depicted.

While the battery is an important part of a train-lighting system, the dynamo and method of regulation are also of interest. The E. S. B. system is shown in diagram form at Fig. 75, and the distinctive features making for automatic operation may be understood by a careful study of the diagram. The dynamo has a bipolar armature rotating between heavy pole shoes, each pole-piece being securely attached to the core pieces. Two pairs of brushes are used, these being spaced on quarters of the commutator, or 90 degrees apart. One pair is short-circuited, while the other is coupled through the series winding to the outside circuit. These brushes are known as the "short-circuit brushes" and the "load brushes," respectively. The pole pieces are provided with the usual field coils, F^1 and F^2. The series winding F^2 is connected between the generator terminal and the top load brush. The control field winding, F^1, is connected across a Wheatstone bridge W and provides the primary field excitation. The magnetic field produced by this primary excitation passes across the armature in the direction of the arrow P, and then through pole shoes, pole necks and frame of the machine. This magnetic field is, under normal operating conditions, of very small strength, producing a low voltage between the short-circuit brushes B^1. This low voltage, however, produces a sufficient flow of current through the short circuit between these brushes and through the armature winding to develop a considerable magneto-motive force. This latter magneto-motive force produces a magnetic field at right angles to the primary field, which passes through the armature and pole shoes, as shown by arrows K, but does not pass through the pole cores or frame of the machine. This secondary field flux produces the desired voltage across the load brushes B^2.

One of the principal results obtained with the Rosenberg type of machine is the development of the same polarity for either direction of rotation without employing any pole changer, or any alterations whatever in the circuit connections. This is due to the fact that when the direction of rotation changes the voltage generated across the short-circuit brushes by the primary field is reversed, *and the current flowing* between these brushes is, therefore, *reversed in direction.* This reverses the direction of the secondary

field K, which produces the voltage across the load brushes B^2. It will be seen, therefore, that when the direction of armature rotation is reversed the direction of the main or secondary field excitation is also reversed, producing no change in polarity. The importance of this can be realized when one takes the method of driving the dynamo armature into consideration. It is belt-connected to one of the car axles and is just as apt to be driven in one direction as the other.

The E. S. B. dynamo is controlled for constant voltage rather

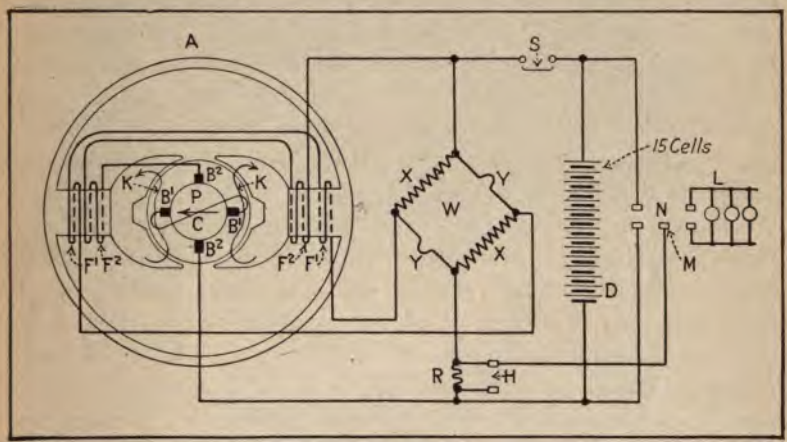


Fig. 75.—Diagram of Dynamo Used with E. S. B. Car-Lighting System.

than constant current, the voltage being held at approximately 33½ volts when used with 15-cell equipments. This control is effected by means of a Wheatstone bridge W connected across the machine terminals at two opposite junction points of the bridge, while the other two opposite points are connected to the field terminals. The Wheatstone bridge consists of two fixed resistances, XX, and two iron wire "ballast" resistances, YY. The iron wire "ballast" resistances have the characteristic of increasing their resistance rapidly with very small increments of current when *operating* at a dull-red heat. The design of this bridge *(for 15-cell equipments)* is such that when the machine voltage

is 33½ volts the resistances of X and Y are practically equal. Under these conditions no current will flow through the field winding F^1. When the voltage is lower than 33½, the resistance of Y is less than the resistance of X, and Y will, therefore, carry more current than X, the excess current flowing through the field winding F^1. As the voltage of the machine increases, therefore, the field excitation becomes smaller and smaller, approaching zero as the voltage approaches 33½ volts. At high speed the current in the field is actually reversed in order to partly counteract the residual magnetism in the pole necks and the frame of the machine. In series with the Wheatstone bridge is a fixed resistance R, which is normally short-circuited by a switch H, and is also short-circuited by a contact clip or by an extra blade on the lamp switch. When the switch H and the lamp switch are both open, the resistance H is no longer short-circuited. The drop in this resistance then lowers the voltage applied across the Wheatstone bridge, and in order to restore the latter to its normal balanced value, the voltage of the machine will be increased by an amount equal to the drop in the resistance R. This arrangement permits the voltage of the machine to be increased during a daylight run, when the lamps are not in use, in order to give the battery a high-voltage charge if this should ever be deemed necessary or advisable. When the lamp switch is closed the resistance R is immediately short-circuited and the voltage of the machine is restored to normal, so that the lamps are never subjected to this high voltage. On the actual switchboard, the switch H consists of two terminals connected by a brass rod, which, by sliding lengthwise, may be disconnected from one of them. While this means for increasing the voltage has been included to provide for possible contingency, it has not been found necessary to use it on any of some seventy equipments in service from two to three years.

Automatic means are provided to prevent a battery overcharge, and a "cutout" arrangement is included to prevent the battery discharging through the generator when its voltage is greater than the electromotive force of the dynamo. Means are provided to *supply generator* current to the battery as it is used, so the cells *are always maintained* in a charged condition. The features of

current control developed in car-lighting service have been adopted by automobile makers in the modern starting and lighting systems which are so popular and now considered indispensable. The experience of the various storage-battery makers in producing satisfactory batteries for this service was turned to good

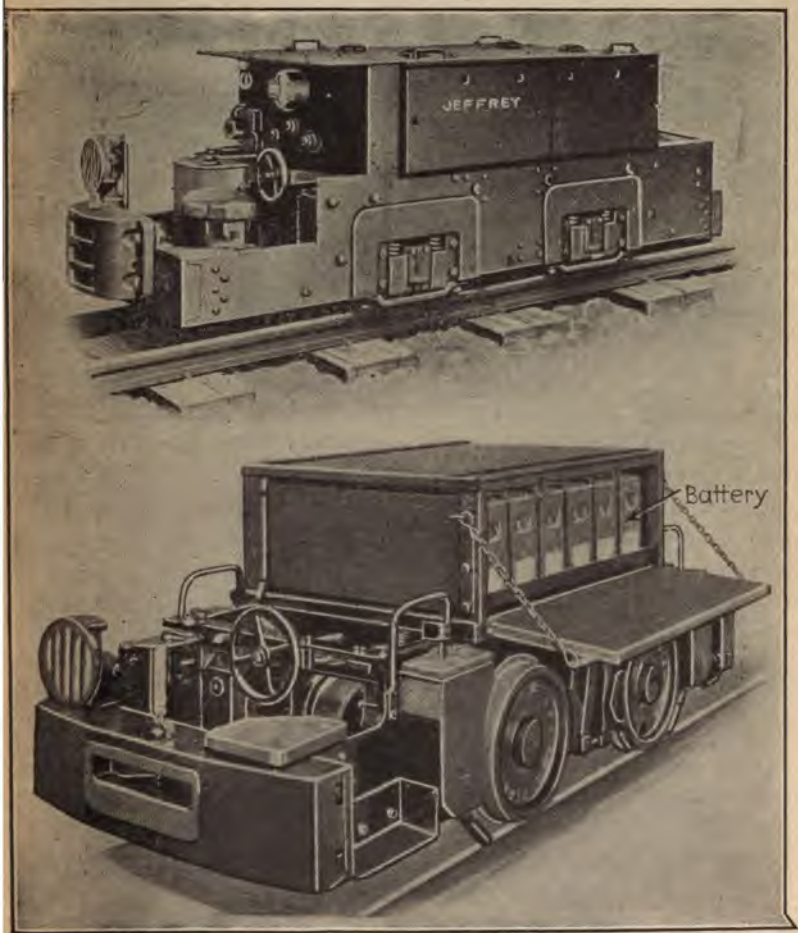


Fig. 76.—Types of Storage-Battery-Propelled Locomotives for Industrial and Mine Haulage.

advantage in building the battery types intended for automobile engine-starting work.

Storage-Battery Locomotives.—The conditions under which storage batteries used in mine locomotives or those intended for industrial work operate call for very careful selection and installation. The battery should always be mounted in the locomotive so the flat of the plate comes against the direction of motion. When the plates are thus assembled in the jars there is no opportunity for displacement, as would be the case with the plates arranged so the edges were facing the direction of movement. A cushioning effect is obtained by the electrolyte against the plate, which is very valuable, as the many shocks incidental to the none too gentle coupling and uncoupling of the locomotive to the loaded cars and shocks due to sudden starts are thus minimized. Rubber cell jars should be considerably heavier for this service than are ordinarily used in automobile work. The trays in which the cells are carried should be provided with substantial partitions so the jars at the ends of the trays will not be subjected to the inertia of the remaining cells. Inasmuch as metal enters so largely into the construction of locomotives, the battery trays should be thoroughly insulated from the frame and should be securely blocked in place so there will be no possibility of shifting. The battery should be mounted apart from the propelling machinery or motor, and so mounted on the frame to permit drainage of the battery compartment. The illustrations at Fig. 76 show typical locomotives for mine and industrial use, and in one the sides of the battery compartment are dropped to show how the battery is mounted and how accessible the trays are.

In case it is desired to make a rough approximation of the size of battery needed, the Electric Storage Battery Company gives a method that is very simple, and while the figures are approximate, they enable the engineer to determine the type and size of battery best adapted for the individual requirements. If boosting charges can be given then batteries of lesser capacity can be used than if the machine must operate for more extended periods on one charge. The number of cells used will, of course, vary with the type of locomotive and its weight. A three-ton locomotive can

be operated on 48 MVII-type cells, and by increasing the capacity of the cells by making them larger the same number can be used for a twenty-five-ton locomotive for freight-yard use and shifting loaded freight cars over tracks in city streets during the night hours when the traffic is light. Of course, the charging current available must be taken into consideration. A 48-cell battery can be charged directly from a 110-volt direct current. In some cases, where a power circuit of 220 volts direct current is used, more cells may be provided and charged directly from the power line. An example of this kind is an eight-ton mine locomotive equipped with 100 MV19-type "Iron Clad" Exide cells.

How to Figure Mine Locomotive Battery Capacity.—The figure of 30 pounds per ton, which is taken as the tractive effort required to overcome friction, is considered sufficient to include an allowance for curves which may be encountered as well as some allowance for tracks that are not up to good railroad standard. The efficiency of 66⅔ per cent. assumed between the battery and locomotive wheels includes an allowance for rheostatic and braking losses as well as for motor and gear losses. Different values may be assigned these constants, as the judgment of the engineer making the approximate calculations may dictate, without changing the method of figuring. The typical round trip should be divided into as many parts as have different characteristics, such as different weight of train and different grades to be encountered. The requirements of each of these sections in each direction of haul should be treated separately in the following manner:

(a) Determine the tractive effort required for level running by multiplying the weight of the train in tons, including locomotive by 30 pounds per ton to get the tractive effort to overcome friction on the level.

(b) Find the tractive effort for grade, if any is encountered, by multiplying the grade expressed in per cent. by 20 and multiplying this by the weight of the train in tons, taking this figure as positive for up grade and negative for down grade.

(c) Add the tractive effort level running and the tractive effort for grade to get the total tractive effort. If the sum is negative, it means the train is coasting and no power is required.

(d) Multiply the total tractive effort by 3 to get watt-hours battery per train mile. (1 watt-hour equals 2.655 foot-pounds, which is very nearly ½ a mile per pound; tractive effort × 2 = watt-hours per train mile at the locomotive wheels. Assuming 66⅔ per cent. efficiency between the battery and the wheels, we have

$$\frac{\text{tractive effort} \times 2}{.66\frac{2}{3}}$$

= tractive effort × 3 = watt-hours per train mile.)

(e) Multiply the watt-hours per train mile by the number of miles of total operation on this section of the track in this direction to get the watt-hours required for this portion of the operation. Repeat the above for all sections of the track and in both directions.

(f) Add the watt-hours required for all portions of the operation, and the sum of these gives the total watt-hours of battery capacity required.

(g) Divide the total watt-hours by the voltage of the battery (the number of cells multiplied by 2) to get the ampere-hours of battery capacity.

(h) Divide the ampere-hours of battery capacity by 31.5 to get the number of positive plates per cell. The figure 31.5, which is the 4½-hour capacity of a positive plate in ampere-hours, can only be used when there are at least 5 cycles of operation approximately evenly distributed over 4½ hours or longer.

(i) Multiply the number of positive plates by 2 and add 1 to get the number of plates per cell.

The example which follows considers only one case, and, of course, applies only to the conditions stated. Each individual application must be considered with full realization of the conditions obtaining, but the procedure to be followed is substantially the same as outlined in any case. In any event, it is always well to consult the engineering department of the battery maker before using batteries for any purpose, as this results in securing advice that will assure a successful installation.

Example.—Assume 600 feet level track and 800 feet of 1.2 *per cent. grade,* a 3-ton locomotive, a 15-ton trailing load in the

irection against the grade and 6 tons trailing load in the direc-on with the grade, 20 round trips per 8-hour day, 48-cell battery.

This round trip can be considered in three parts:

First, 800 feet up 1.2 per cent. grade, 18-ton train.

Second, 800 feet down 1.2 per cent. grade 9-ton train.

Third, all level running can be grouped, using the full distance nd the average load 1,200 feet level, 13.5-ton train.

FIRST PART

(*a*)

```
  18  tons
  30  pounds per ton friction
------
 540  pounds TE for friction
```

(*b*)

```
 1.2  per cent. grade
  20  pounds per cent. per ton
------
  24  pounds per ton grade
  18  tons
------
 432  pounds TE for grade
```

(*c*)

```
 540  pounds TE for friction (a)
------
 972  pounds TE total
```

(*d*)

```
   3
------
2916  watt-hours per mile
```

(*e*)

```
      800 feet per trip
       20 trips
    ------
5280|16000 feet
    10560
    -----
     5440
     5280
     ----
      160
3.03 miles

2916 watt-hours per mile (d)
3.03 miles
------
8830 watt-hours for first part
```

SECOND PART

(*a*)
9 tons
30 pounds per ton friction
270 pounds TE for friction

(*b*)
—24 tons per ton for grade (*b*, first part)
9 tons
—216 pounds TE for grade

(*c*)
0 pounds TE for friction
—216 pounds TE for grade
54 pounds TE total

(*d*)
3
162 watt-hours per mile

(*e*)
3.03 miles (*e*, first part)
491 watt-hours for second part

THIRD PART

(*a*)
13.5 tons
30 pounds per ton friction
405 pounds TE for friction

(*b*) No grade

(*c*) 405 pounds per ton total

(*d*)
3
1215 **watt-hours per mile**

(*e*)
1200 feet per trip
20 trips

5280|24000 feet
4.55 miles
1215 watt-hours per mile

5530 watt-hours, third part

(*f*)
491 watt-hours, second part
8830 watt-hours, first part

14851 watt-hours, total

(*g*)
48 cells at 2 volts per cell gives 96 volts
96|14851 watt-hours

(*h*) 31.5|155 ampere-hours
4.7 positive plates, 5 must be used

(*i*) $5 \times 2 = 10 \quad 10 + 1 = 11$
Battery will be 48 cells, MV-11.

Storage-Battery Street-Railway Car.—The first practical power-propelled street-cars were converted horse-drawn types electrified by the use of storage batteries. The defects of the early storage-battery designs and the development of the present overhead feed-wire and trolley, as well as the utilization of high-voltage motors for this purpose, halted development of battery cars for a period. The improvements that have been made in modern storage batteries show that it can now occupy a position of importance in the transportation field. A variety of systems of street-car propulsion are available, each having a distinct field of usefulness. They may be divided into broad classes, one whose units are supplied with power from a central station, with which they must always be in contact, and those employing self-contained units. In the first class, we have third-rail, cable-conduit and trolley systems; in the second are grouped storage-battery and gasoline-electric types. The Electric Storage Battery Com-

pany have made a study of the battery car problem, and with the co-operation of the car builder and electrical apparatus manufacturer, types have been designed that are especially adapted for street-car work. Cars of very high speed and power have been successfully propelled by storage-battery current, as well as the single-truck cars used in belt-line service.

Among the situations which may present conditions favorable to the use of storage-battery cars are the following:

1. Short rural lines not connected with other systems, yet meeting a distinct transportation need.

2. Extensions or spurs to existing electric systems, serving districts which it is desirable to develop, but where the immediate traffic will not justify overhead construction investment.

3. Lines operated to meet some local and special transportation demand other than general public service, as, for example, between mills or factories and a main railroad depot or residential center, plantation railroads, belt-line service in large manufacturing plants, and the like.

4. For the operation of branch lines or extensions used only during certain seasons of the year, as in connection with seaside and summer resorts, amusement parks and the like.

5. As an adjunct to steam lines to supplement the regular steam-train service, furnish local service at short intervals and to branch lines; particularly on roads devoted largely to freight traffic, where there is need of a passenger service, but insufficient traffic to justify regular steam-train operation.

6. Where local ordinances or other reasons do not permit the use of overhead trolley construction.

7. For providing infrequent night or "owl" service.

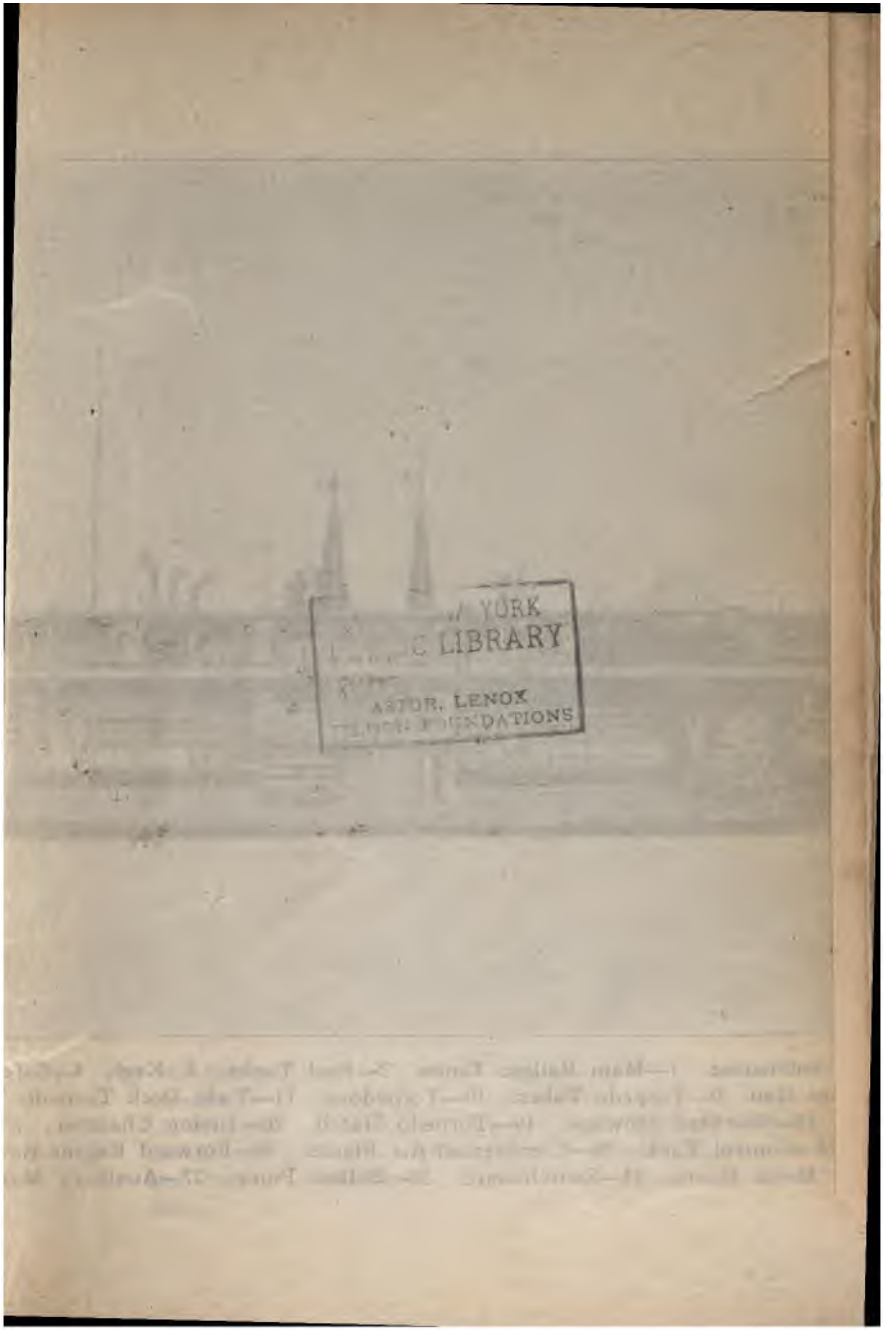
The storage battery for a single-truck car is located beneath longitudinal car seats in ventilated compartments, and can be easily reached for inspection by removing the seats and thus exposing the battery cell tops. It is composed of 58 cells, of type MV29 Exide, having a capacity of 67 amperes for six hours' continuous discharge at an average of 114 volts. The cells are contained in substantial wooden trays, each containing four cells. Fifteen such trays are provided, the total number of cells

mounted in this manner being fifty-six. Two extra cells are needed to bring the battery up to the desired capacity, these being carried in smaller individual trays. The trays are convenient units for easily removing the battery from the car if necessary, but as it may be charged in place and electrolyte readings and evaporation loss compensated for by removing the seats, in ordi-

Fig. 77.—Storage-Battery-Propelled Street-Railway Cars. At Top—Single-Truck Car for Belt-Line Work in Cities. Below it, Fast Double-Truck Interurban Car.

nary operation the battery need not be removed from the car. The total weight of the battery is 4,876 pounds. The cells are practically of the same general construction as heavy motor-truck batteries, being of the sealed type. Cars equipped with a battery of this capacity will take a 7 per cent. grade with full passenger

NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS


YORK
LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

discharge, and about 540 kilowatt-hours at the one-hour rate of discharge. This capacity would be in excess of the capacity of any lead storage battery installed in the same tank, and would be five or six tons lighter than a lead-sulphuric-acid battery installed in the same tank. This will naturally give the vessel an increased cruising area under water and provide excess capacity, because of the reduction in weight, for fuel oil."

The advantages of the Edison battery are given by the same authority as follows:

"First, it is the lightest battery, and occupies the least space for a given output of any now obtainable.

"Second, its electrolyte is non-corrosive, is not injurious to the steel work of the hold or fittings of the boat.

"Third, it cannot cause leaks by corrosion of rivets or joints, no matter how much electrolyte might escape from the cells.

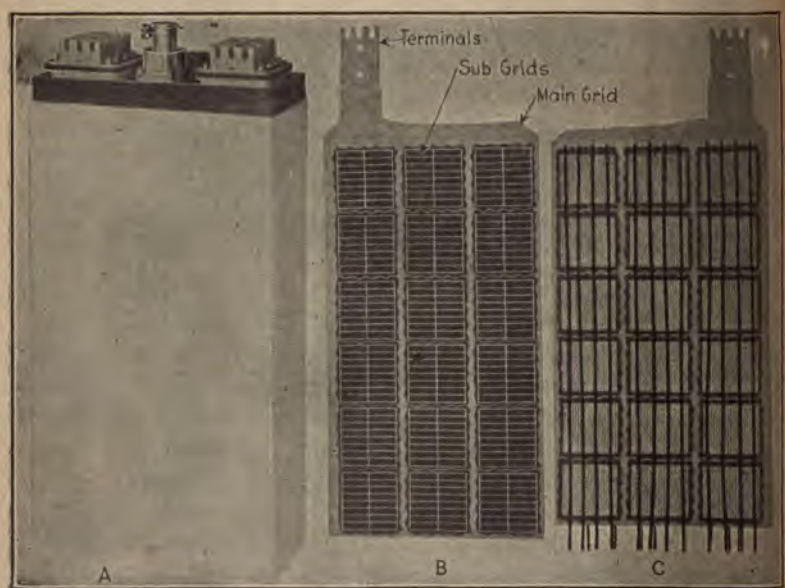
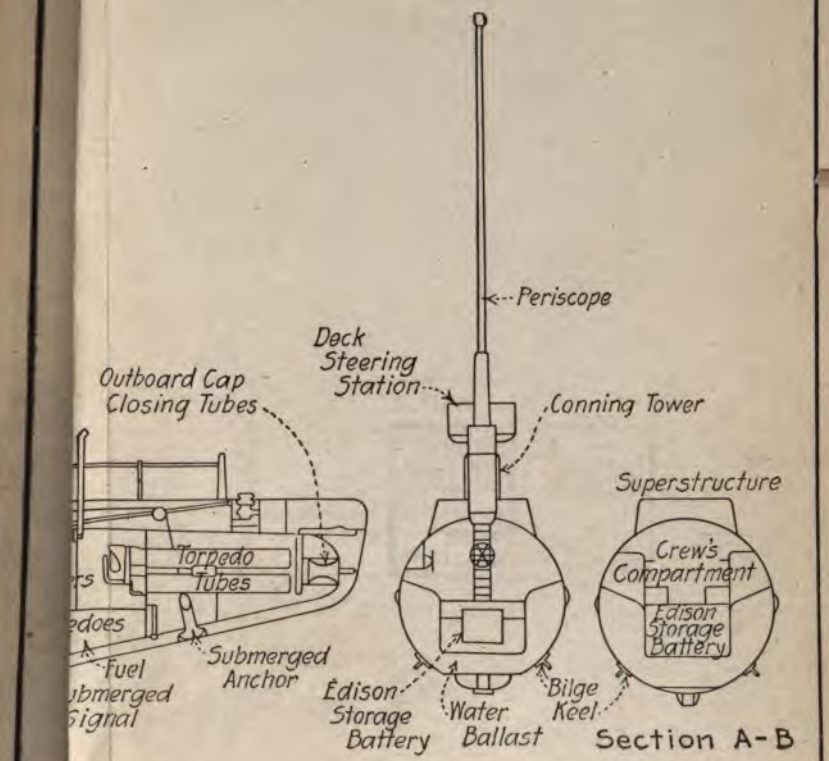
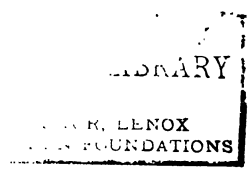


Fig. 80.—The **Edison Submarine Boat Battery and Two of the Plates Showing Use of Sub-Grids.**


Periscope
Deck
Steering
Station
Outboard Cap
Closing Tubes
Conning Tower
Superstructure
Torpedo
Tubes
Crew's
Compartment
Edison
Storage
Battery
Submerged
Anchor
Fuel
Edison
Storage
Battery
Water
Ballast
Bilge
Keel
Section A-B


LIBRARY
R, LENOX
FOUNDATIONS

"Fourth, in the event of sea-water entering the boat, through
cs caused by external explosion of submarine mines, etc., the
sonnel cannot be asphyxiated by the formation of chlorine gas.
"Fifth, its mechanical structure makes it capable of resisting
cks, rough treatment and concussion from nearby external ex-
sion of submarine mines and bombs.
"Sixth, it is impossible to buckle or distort the plates by rapid
rge or discharge.
"Seventh, the active materials do not shed off with use.
"Eighth, the capacity does not diminish with use until the life
:he battery is nearly exhausted.
"Ninth, it does not require dismantling to remove sediment.
"Tenth, it has a longer life under any given conditions than
other available battery.
"Eleventh, the individual cells are comparatively light, and
y be easily handled if necessary.
"Twelfth, an excess emergency capacity may be stored by pro-
ged overcharge.
"Thirteenth, the plates are not injured by standing discharged
the electrolyte for any length of time.
"Fourteenth, it is unnecessary to remove plates or electrolyte
:n a boat is laid up or put in reserve.
"Fifteenth, no hydrometer readings are necessary.
"Sixteenth, it is not necessary to carry a supply of electrolyte.
"Seventeenth, it can be charged at high rate. In fact, a full
rge can be put into the battery in one hour if the electrical
:hinery is available for doing this.
"Eighteenth, it is never necessary to remove sediment or re-
:e separators, and also because of its long life a boat equipped
h an Edison storage battery can be kept in service and does
have to be laid up on account of battery conditions when it
/ be required for military purposes.
"Nineteenth, in an emergency sea-water can be used for the
enishment of electrolyte. While if this is done frequently the
es will ultimately lose some capacity, no harm results from
ıg it a few times under stress of military necessity.
"Twentieth, oxygen is given off at a low rate of discharge.

Just enough to maintain the atmosphere of the boat in condition for the crew in any long period of submergence.

"Twenty-first, carbon dioxide is absorbed by the potash of electrolyte if the air can come in contact with the liquid. In case of protracted submergence, air can be circulated through the electrolyte by passing it through the drain tube and allowing it to emerge from the filler opening. While this is not a function of the battery, the benefit to clear the atmosphere of carbonic acid gas may prove of considerable value in case of enforced protracted submergence.

"Twenty-second, the plates cannot be injured by rubbing together when the boat is in a seaway, and plate necks cannot be broken off.

"Twenty-third, it cannot generate any explosive gases except when charging and ventilation is outbound. It cannot generate an explosive mixture of gases in the boat under practical operating submerged condition, and is, for the reason that it does not generate any gases whatever on discharge, the safest battery to be used in submarines."

The Gould Storage Battery Company, through their chief engineer, A. S. Hubbard, gives the following information relative to the Gould type batteries they have supplied to foreign governments:

"The foreign batteries consist of 120 cells, 25 plates per cell, pasted positives, pasted negatives; the plates are 15¼ inches wide, ¼ inch thick, 30 inches deep. The capacity is about 2,340 amperes for one hour per cell, giving an output for the 120 cells of about 475 kilowatts for one hour. These cells weigh about 950 pounds each, complete. The cells are individually ventilated by an exhaust blower, and the gases diluted so as to avoid the danger of explosion. The diluted gases are discharged into the atmosphere when the boat is on the surface, and the batteries are being charged and are discharged into the living compartment when the boat is submerged and the batteries discharging. It should be understood, of course, that the gases given off both on *charge and discharge* consist of oxygen and hydrogen, on *discharge mainly* of the latter, and very little of it at that, and fur-

ther hydrogen in small quantities has no physiological effect. The cells are sealed except at the air inlets and exits to keep dirt and salt water out. The design of the cell permits of an inclination of 40 degrees without spilling the solution."

It is only fair to the lead-plate type of battery to state that many of the troubles ascribed to their use could have been eliminated by careful attention to details of installation, and that there are numerous successful installations in United States Government craft that we are not permitted to describe or illustrate. Enough has been given, however, to show how important the

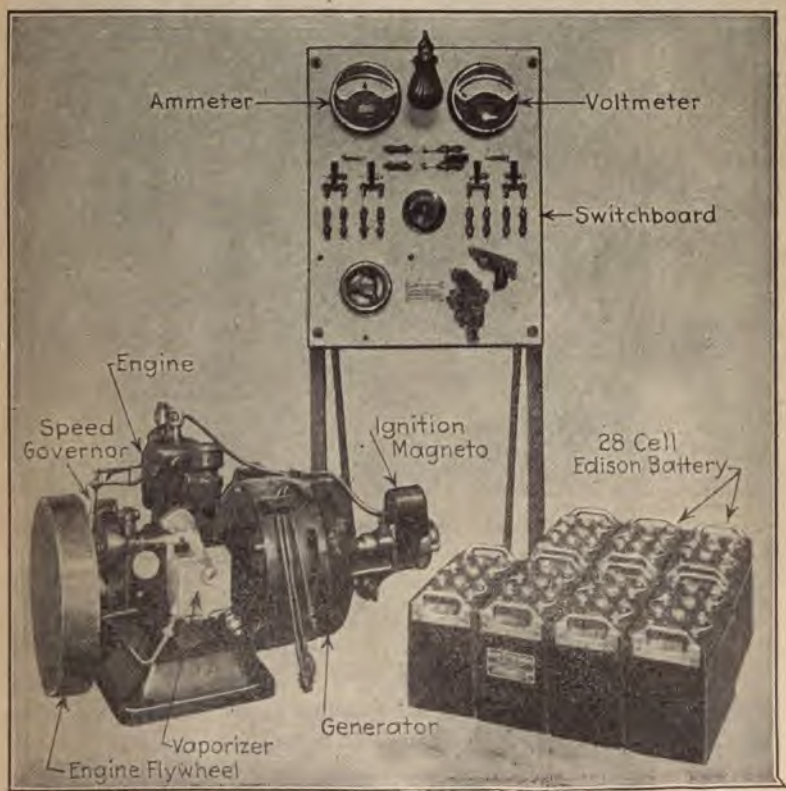


Fig. 82.—Yacht-Lighting **Outfit, With Unit Power Plant, Switchboard and 28-Cell Battery.**

storage battery is when the submarine is lurking in the ocean depths where no other power but electricity could be used advantageously.

Miscellaneous Marine Applications.—Storage batteries are used in many ways on shipboard, and form an essential part of the electrical equipment on a great variety of craft. Owing to the ease of installation, electric-lighting outfits are now available that will function properly in everything from the 30-foot cabin cruiser

EDISON STORAGE BATTERIES FOR YACHT-LIGHTING PLANTS
APPROXIMATE EQUIPMENT BASED ON 10-HOUR SERVICE

Approximate Length of Boat	Voltage	Number of Cells	Type of Cell	Lamps	
				Number	Candle Power
18 ft. to 30 ft.	6	5	B2 B4 B6	6 12 18	6 6 6
30 ft. to 45 ft.	12 to 20	10–20	B4 B6 A4	12 to 18 18 to 24 24 to 30	10 10 10
50 ft. to 75 ft.	30	28	B4 B6 A4	26 32 40	10 10 10
90 ft. to 300 ft.	110	100	B2 to A12	30 to 200	16

NOTE:—Where 60-volt or 80-volt systems are required, 55 cells and 75 cells, respectively, are recommended.

to the luxurious private yacht. While power-driven outfits are available in which a dynamo is driven by auxiliary steam or gasoline engine distinct from the main power plant used in propelling the vessel, lights may be required at any time during the day or night, so there must be some constant source of current supply. *For pleasure craft* the continuous operation of an engine and *dynamo is inconvenient* and often disagreeable, and it is almost

imperative to operate the electric lights from a storage battery charged at convenient intervals. A typical yacht-lighting outfit is shown at Fig. 82; this does not differ to any extent from the small isolated lighting plants sold for house and farm lighting. A 28-cell Edison storage battery is used in connection with the generating unit, which includes the gasoline engine and dynamo coupled together and fastened to a common base. According to the table

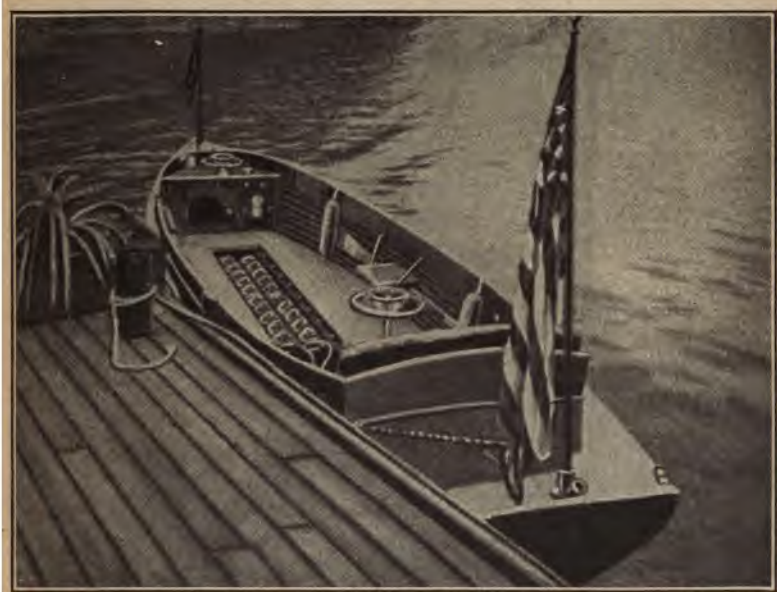


Fig. 83.—Electric Launch, With Storage Batteries Under the Floor.

given below, which has been furnished by the Edison Storage Battery Company, the outfit illustrated is suitable for boats varying from 50 to 75 feet in length.

Wherever charging facilities are available, the electric launch is an ideal family boat. They are noiseless and simple to control, and can be operated by anyone, even without mechanical experience. It glides gracefully and smoothly along and runs without vibration. There is absolutely no danger of fire, as is present in steam launches and to a less degree with gasoline engines. The

electric motor is the simplest and most dependable source of power known, as it has but one moving part, and that is a rotating one. It is started reversed, stopped, and its speed varied by a simple wheel or lever. The battery may be easily stowed away under the floor boards, and if an Edison alkaline battery is employed, as in the launch shown at Fig. 83, the boat may be used in salt water just as well as fresh.

The alkaline battery gives absolute reliability to the electric launch by eliminating battery troubles. It is practically as rugged as the motor itself, and never disappoints the owner by going dead at critical periods. As there are no obnoxious, irritating or corrosive fumes given off by this type during charge, the charging may be done directly in the boathouse, without discomfort or the discoloration of metal trimmings on the launch or other vessels near it. During the period of idleness, which practically all pleasure craft of this kind experience, the Edison battery does not deteriorate. If charged before being laid up there will be ample power to run the launch many miles as soon as it is put into commission again. Those who have experienced the difficulties of "taking down," packing and reassembling other types of batteries will appreciate this advantage.

Reliability is of paramount importance in every detail of wireless telegraph apparatus. No doubtful or suspiciously weak device can be tolerated in a system upon which the lives of passengers and crew are likely to depend at any moment. And the auxiliary apparatus, the part that has to be ready at an instant's notice, but may be left to take care of itself for weeks and months in the absence of emergencies, must be always ready beyond the possibility of a doubt. This reliability for auxiliary service is found only in the storage battery. During periods of idleness there should be no internal deterioration or wasting away of active material. Left charged, the alkaline battery may be recharged at any time without injury, no matter how much or how little of the previous charge has been used. In the severest storms or in case of collision there is no danger of broken jars or spilled electrolyte *because of the strength* of the steel construction. The lighting *battery of small boats* may, of course, be used to operate the wire-

less equipment, and often the auxiliary wireless telegraph battery of larger vessels is used for a reserve lighting system, including "police" lights around the decks and cabins and emergency lamps in the running-lights. Lead-plate storage batteries have been used successfully for wireless work, but more care is needed as regards charging and discharging. Where the lighting battery is used for a wireless auxiliary, the use of the lights keeps the battery in proper condition, and the lead-plate type will give excellent service. Under conditions where the battery is apt to be neglected as regards regular charging and discharging, the alkaline type is the best.

Railway Switch and Signal Service.—An absolutely dependable source of power is needed for operating the block signals on our railways, and any failure of a semaphore or signal lamp to answer the control switch in the signal tower may result disastrously. The stored energy in a secondary battery is always available for this work, and either lead plate or alkaline batteries are suitable. The illustration at Fig. 84 shows the compact installation possible

Fig. 84.—Showing How Alkaline Battery May Be Installed in Signal Tower Adjacent to Control Switches, etc.

when batteries of the alkaline type are used. Lead batteries may be placed under a hood and the gases allowed to escape to the outside through a suitable vent if they are installed in the same room as apparatus that may be affected by fumes evolved during the charging process.

For railway signaling the alkaline battery has great advantages by reason of its electrolyte. There being no corrosive fumes or vapors produced, the batteries may be placed anywhere in the signal tower. There is no danger of injuring the most delicate apparatus, and many installations of such batteries are in the same room as and in close proximity to relays, generators, air-compressing machinery, etc.

The Stand-by Battery.—The storage battery is used in many central stations as an emergency source of current to cope with unusual current requirements or to supply electricity for a brief time in event of damage to the dynamos or their prime mover. Among some of the conditions that would call for discharge of a stand-by battery would be interruption of current supply, due, for instance, to low steam or belt breakage in a steam plant or collection of ice in the forebay of a hydraulic generating plant. A breakdown of the generating machinery, putting some of the dynamos out of commission, thus reducing the plant capacity, would necessitate the use of the emergency current. An accidental opening of a transmission line or unexpected increase of load, such as is caused by everyone turning on the electric lights because of a sudden darkening in the daytime prior to a rainstorm, will also draw on the reserve source.

In the early applications of storage batteries to central station service one of the main objects sought was to improve the daily load factor in a steam plant by discharging the battery during the evening peak or period of heavy demand and recharging it during the hours of lighter load. This will result in a marked improvement in plant efficiency because power costs less if produced at a uniform rate. Where the peak is of short duration, the cost of a battery will be less than the added steam equipment it displaces, and as it conduces to greater economy of current production, this is a clear gain. When a charged storage battery is

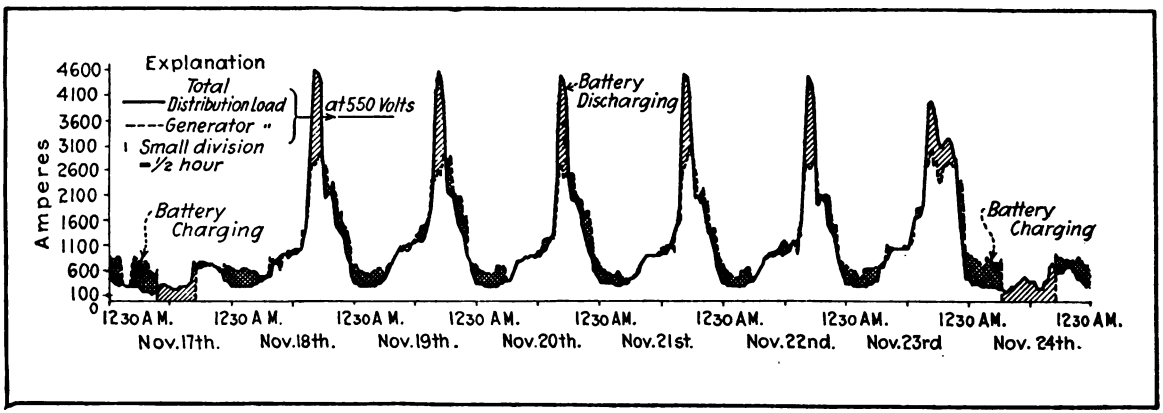


Fig. 85.—How Stand-by Battery Helps on Peak Load Work.

available as an auxiliary source of energy, it is always ready for emergency use, and this advantage is one of great value and can hardly be considered fairly on a purely pecuniary basis. The chart at Fig. 85 shows the operation of a battery in daily peak-load work. That at Fig. 86 shows how the output of a stand-by battery helped to handle an unexpected lighting load on a central station due to a particularly heavy thunderstorm. These curves are merely graphic records of the amount of current used under certain conditions and in a given time, and are easily understood.

A stand-by battery uses rugged plate construction and is always composed of very large-size cells. Type H Exide plates, which are widely used in the larger installations, are 31 inches high by 15 5/16 inches wide. The grids are castings of lead-antimony alloy and are provided with very heavy connecting lugs. When it is considered that a plate of this size may be called upon to discharge 600 amperes or more for several minutes, it will be realized that great care must be taken in proportioning the plates. The plates are hung from the cell tops by the plate lugs, which rest on vertical pieces of heavy glass arranged on either side of the tank, suitably notched to receive the plate lugs. The glass plates rest upon the reinforced lead lining at the bottom of the cell. A space of ¾ inch is left between the outside negative plate and side of the tank at one end to permit the taking of hydrometer readings. An instance of the large size of the cells is the sediment space allowed, which is 12 inches in a type H cell.

A tank suitable for an Exide element having a capacity of 3,000 amperes for one hour measures about 22⅝ inches long by 21½ inches wide. For a capacity of 6,000 amperes at the hour rate the length is increased to three feet, and for 9,000 amperes the length is nearly five feet. The height of such a cell from the floor to the busbar is about 5½ feet, or high enough so the average man can barely look into the cell. The tanks are built of specially selected yellow pine, put together with glued, dovetailed and doweled joints. No nails or metallic fastenings of any kind are used. The lumber used is of sufficient strength to be entirely self-supporting. These tanks are treated with two coats of acid-*resisting paint* inside and out.

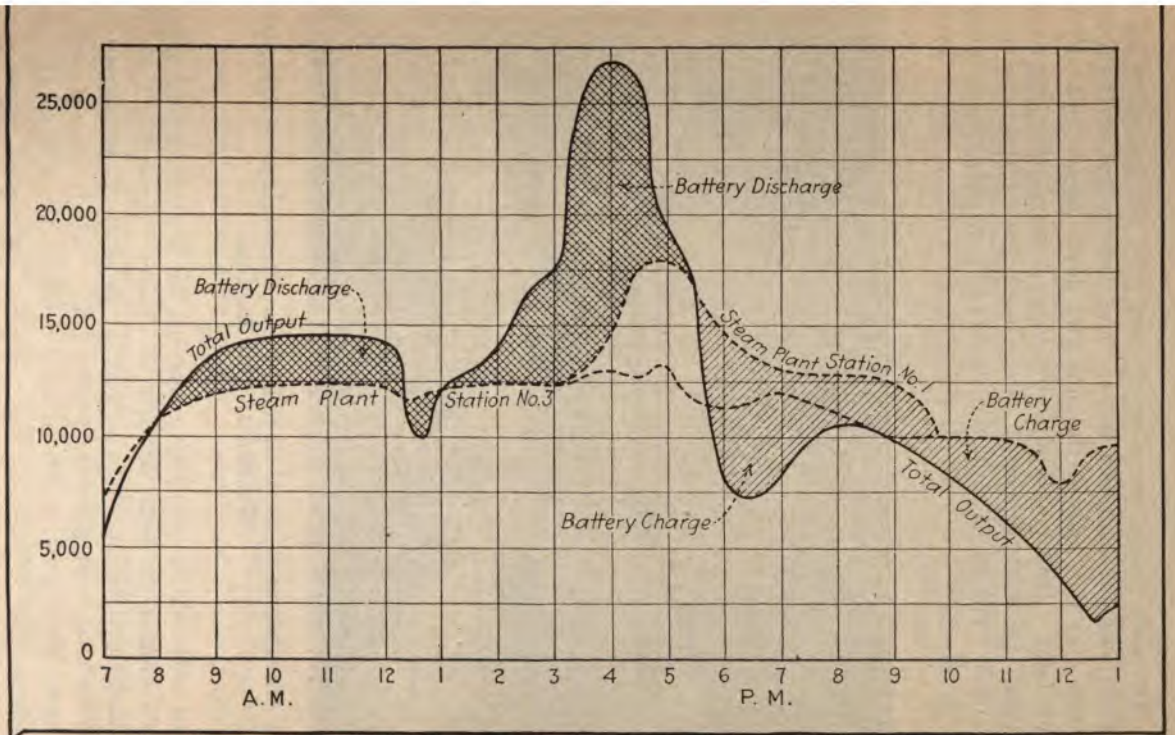


Fig. 86—How Exide Stand-by Battery Helped to Handle Unexpected Lighting Load.

The tank linings are of pure sheet lead, the lap seams being burned with the hydrogen flame. The upper edges of the lining extend over the edges of the tank and down outside clear of the tank faces. Drip points are provided, so spaced that they come between the tank supports. Good insulation of the cells is an essential. The Exide insulator consists of a glass body surrounded by an inverted petticoat, this forming an annular trough partly

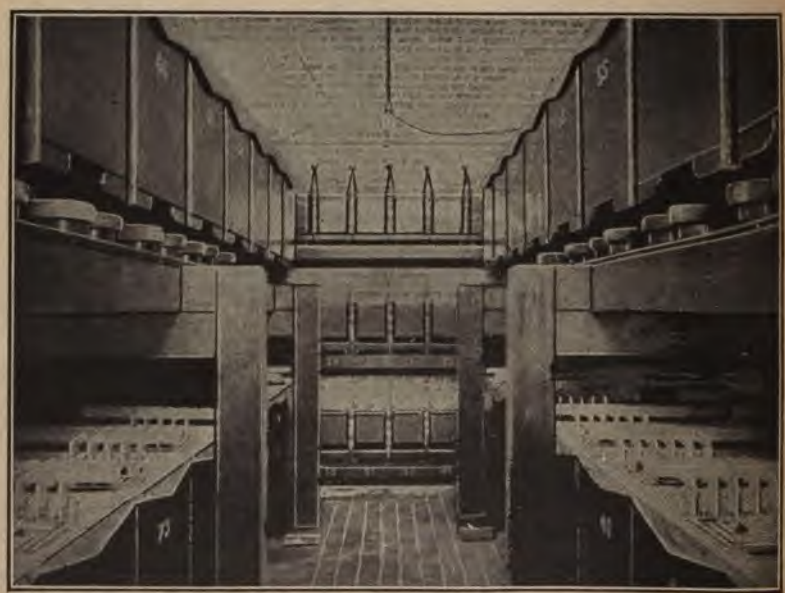


Fig. 87.—Battery-Room of Calumet River Draw-bridge of Calumet & Western Indiana Railroad.

filled with oil, the whole being covered with a lead cap extending down around the sides but out of contact therewith. Each oil insulator rests on a truncated cone or pedestal of earthenware or a composition not affected by acid. Each cell is covered with a plate of heavy glass, which serves to condense the acid spray. All conductors are of specially heavy section lead-coated copper bars, *firmly bolted together*. The plates of each cell, joined together

to form an element or plate group, are lead-burned to soft-lead busbars.

The total number of cells required is determined by the maximum busbar voltage permissible at the end of a high-discharge rate. For example, if a battery is installed of capacity enough to carry a maximum peak load for ten minutes a voltage of 100 each side of a three-wire system might be considered satisfactory. This would call for 75 cells each side. If at any time during the day it is necessary to float the battery at a voltage as low as 115 volts, the main battery would consist of 55 cells each side, leaving an auxiliary battery of 20 end-cells on each side. These end-cells are brought into action as needed by special switches.

In arranging a battery-room for such a large battery, special attention is given the floor construction, because drainage is important. Ventilation must be exceptionally good, and all exposed metal work should be protected by acid-proof paint. Concrete has been used for battery-room floors, and is satisfactory if care is taken to flush it with water frequently to wash away any electrolyte that may have accumulated. Hard-burned tile or vitrified brick is much more suitable. The floor should be laid on a concrete foundation, of sufficient strength to carry the weight. The slope should be such as to allow for positive drainage, and the floor covered with asphaltum felt. Spaces of ¼ inch are left between the bricks or tiles, these spaces being grouted with asphalt compound. An exhaust ventilating system is almost an essential if the battery is used much. The fan parts should be of bronze, and air from the room should be filtered through an air-box having perforated lead screen to eliminate acid spread. It is said that air in a battery-room should be changed completely four times an hour during the gassing period of the charge.

Storage Batteries for Draw-Bridge Operation.—An unfailing source of power is an absolute necessity where draw-bridges are operated by electric motors, as most of them are. This applies especially to railway bridges, where any failure of the power supply would seriously interrupt travel on either the waterway or railway. *Vessels have been badly injured due to failure to open a draw. Bridges may be operated by separate power plants, consist-*

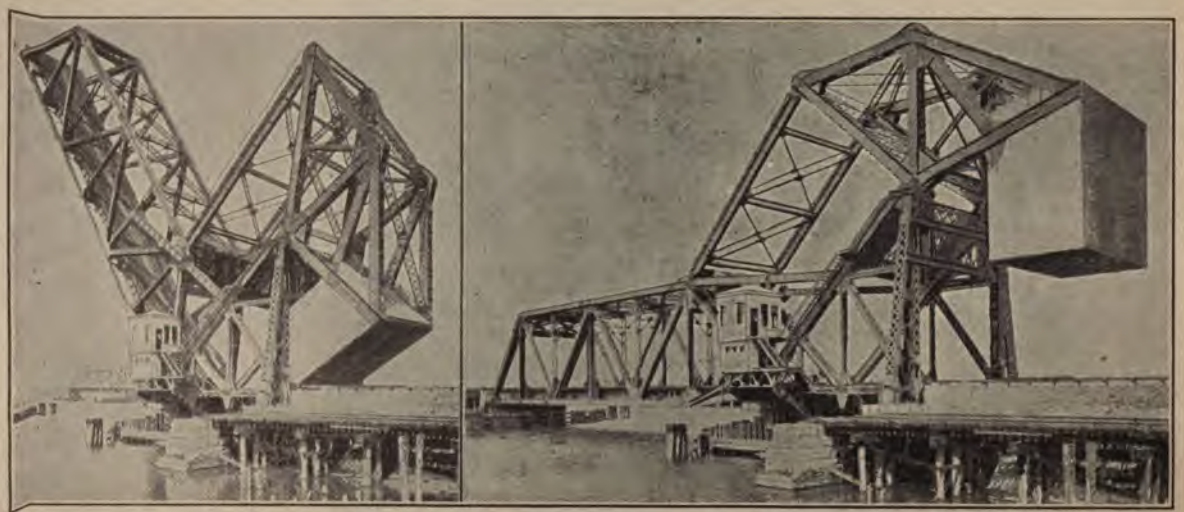


Fig. 88.—Calumet & Western Indiana Railroad Bridge in Open and Closed Positions.

ing of dynamos driven by internal-combustion engines, or they may take their power from a trolley or lighting system. In either case, an auxiliary storage-battery installation insures absolutely reliable service, even in event of failure of the main source of current. This is of special value where a bridge is over a widely used stream. The main principles of operation and the requirements are practically the same as obtain when storage batteries are used for stand-by service. A typical installation, where the movable span of the bascule pattern is 186 feet long and weighs 1,100,100 pounds itself, in addition to a 3,000,000-pound concrete counterbalance, consists of two batteries, one to furnish power for the bridge motors, the other for signals and lighting. The larger battery consists of 120 type F11 "Chloride Accumulator" elements in lead-lined wooden tanks. Each element has a normal capacity of 400 ampere-hours at 240 volts. The general arrangement of the tanks in the battery-room is shown at Fig. 87. The views at Fig. 88 show the bridge in open and closed positions.

Edison Storage-Battery Mine Lamp.—The greatest danger in mines to-day is from the use of unprotected flames wherever the deadly fire damp is likely to be encountered. Artificial light is an essential which formerly could not be obtained with safety unless provided in such minute quantity as to seriously curtail production. The Davy safety oil lamp is well known and has been widely used, but electric lighting gives much superior results. Much ingenuity has been shown in trying to adapt portable electric lamps to this work, but the stumbling-block always has been the production of current for their operation. The only practical source of energy is naturally some sort of battery, and many attempts have been made to modify the old types of cells so that they would serve the purpose satisfactorily. The advocates of the primary battery soon found that the inherent defects of this type were greatly magnified when an endeavor was made to produce a portable form of small size and weight with sufficient capacity to keep an electric lamp burning any considerable time. Aside from this, the electrical energy is produced in a primary battery by the consumption of the zinc plates, so that there was constant expense and trouble for their renewal. The primary cell was early dimi-

nated from serious consideration, and experiments made with secondary or storage batteries have until lately been far from successful. The Edison mine lamp, shown at Fig. 89, is considered a practical solution of this problem, because of the "meddle-proof" qualities of the Edison alkaline battery. The cells used are the same in principle as the nickel-iron alkaline batteries developed for other purposes, but are small and very light.

The cells fit snugly into a light case of *rust-proof steel,* which is primarily a box in which to carry the battery. There is no insulation between the cells, and the case and the contact springs on the cell poles hold the battery securely when the cover is in place.

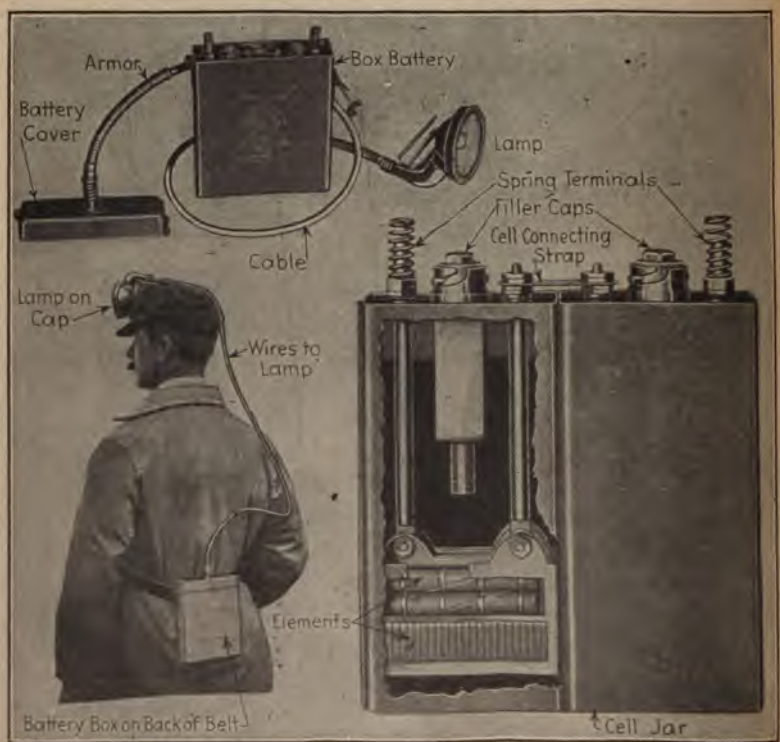


Fig. 89.—**The Edison Storage Battery Mine Lamp Outfit and How It is Used.**

The cover has a separable hinge, which permits its entire removal when open and facilitates charging the batteries in "banks." Covers and cases, equipped with self-contained locks, are interchangeable. The two cells are connected in series, the positive pole of one and the negative of the other being grounded to their containers, and the containers connected together. The free terminals carry the spiral contact springs, which press against nickeled-steel contact plates in the cover. The contact plates are insulated from the cover and receive the cable terminals. A twin-conductor, rubber-covered cable connects the battery to the cap lamp. At each end the cable is thoroughly armored, preventing injury from sharp bending. While lamp and reflector are being carried in the hand or at other times the armor takes up all the weight, so there is no possibility of strain coming upon the wires at the terminals. An ingenious arrangement permits the easy replacement of the cable should it be cut or otherwise injured in service. The cap lamp consists of a nickel-plated brass reflector provided with a hook to fit into the regulation miner's cap. A tungsten lamp is forced into a spring socket by means of a clip at its tip in such a way that if the lamp be broken the base is immediately disconnected and the lamp extinguished. This safety feature has been thoroughly tested by the Bureau of Mines and unqualifiedly approved under Schedule 6A.

CHAPTER VI

GLOSSARY OF STORAGE BATTERY TERMS

Acid.—As used in this book refers to sulphuric acid (H_2SO_4), the active component of the electrolyte.

Acidometer.—A hydrometer for testing specific gravity of acid, and specially graduated for that purpose.

Active Material.—The active portion of the battery plates; peroxide of lead on the positives and spongy metallic lead on the negatives of lead-plate types.

Alternating Current.—Electric current which does not flow in one direction only, like direct current, but rapidly reverses its direction or "alternates" in polarity so that it will not charge a battery.

Alloy.—A mixture of two or more metals produced by fusion, i. e., brass is an alloy of copper and zinc melted together; German silver is an alloy of copper, nickel and zinc.

Ampere.—The unit of measure of the rate of flow of electric current.

Ampere-Hour.—The unit of measure of the quantity of electric current; thus, 2 amperes flowing for ½ hour equals 1 ampere-hour.

Anode.—The opposite plate to the cathode as the carbon plate of a primary battery. The anode is the terminal the current passes into from the solution.

Antimony.—A bright, bluish-white, brittle and easy-pulverized metal combined in small quantities with lead to form a harder alloy suitable for storage-battery plate grids.

Arc-Burning.—Making a joint by means of electric current, which melts the metal of the parts to be joined together.

Asphaltum.—A natural, tarry substance, not affected by acid, and also an electrical insulator, widely used as a basis for cell-sealing compounds.

Battery.—Any number of complete cells assembled in one set.

Battery Terminals.—Devices attached to the positive post of one end cell and the negative of the other, by means of which the battery is connected to the outer circuit.

Buckling.—Warping or bending of the battery plates.

Burning-Strip.—A convenient form of lead, in strips, for filling up the joint in making burned connections.

Busbar.—A main conductor, usually of heavy section, to which a number of circuit ends having the same characteristics are attached, to *save wiring. All* positive plates of a storage cell may be said to be *attached to a busbar,* the negative plates likewise. Instead of having a

separate conductor coming from each plate and joined to the outer circuit, the plates of a given polarity are grouped by attaching to a busbar.

Carbon.—One of the chemical elements. A black solid, that may exist as coal, charcoal or graphite, or, after it has been subjected to intense heat and pressure, as a white diamond. A conductor of electricity, having considerable resistance. It is used as a neutral plate in primary batteries, for lead-burning electrodes and for rheostat work. It is not affected by acid. Most of the carbon used in electrical work is manufactured and is not a natural product, as graphite.

Carboy.—A large glass bottle carried in a wooden case for easy handling. Used to hold acid, electrolyte or water.

Cathode.—The terminal of an electric circuit from which the current passes into the solution. The zinc plate of a primary battery is a cathode. The cathode is always the element of a battery most acted upon by the electrolyte.

Case.—The containing-box which holds the battery cells.

Cell.—The battery unit, consisting of an element complete with electrolyte, in its jar with cover.

Cell Connector.—The metal link which connects the positive post of one cell to the negative post of the adjoining cell.

Central Station.—A complete power plant equipped with large dynamos for supplying electric energy to an entire district.

Charge.—Passing direct current through a battery in the direction opposite to that of discharge, in order to put back the energy used on discharge.

Charge Rate.—The proper rate of current to use in charging a battery from an outside source. It is expressed in amperes, and varies for different-sized cells.

Chemical Change.—The uniting of certain primary or basic substances to form secondary ones, or the breaking apart of complex substances to determine their essential elements. Chemical combination is when elements form a new substance. For instance, hydrogen and oxygen gases combined in the proper proportions will form the liquid we know as water. Decomposition is the reverse of combining elements, Water may be decomposed and hydrogen and oxygen gas liberated by electrolysis.

Chemical Element.—These are basic substances, of which everything in the universe is composed. They may be solid, such as iron, zinc, lead or carbon; they may exist as a gas, such as hydrogen and oxygen, or as a liquid, such as bromine. Some elements combine rapidly with nearly all the others, and some cannot combine except with certain ones. Oxygen is the most active element, and will combine with many of the rest. *There are about seventy-five* of these elements, though practically *everything on earth may be* made by various combinations of less than twenty

of them. The process of combining elements is known as "synthesis," that of separating them as "analysis." The elements which combine together the easiest are the hardest to separate.

Circuits.—An electrical circuit is said to be an open circuit when the current cannot flow, and a closed circuit if there is a continuous path for the electricity.

Circuit-Breaker.—An automatic, mechanical, electrically actuated device that takes the place of the fuse and performs the same function in an electric circuit.

Compound Winding.—A method of winding electric machines where both series and shunt windings are incorporated.

Conductor.—A pipe is a conductor of water. If two electrically charged bodies are connected by a piece of wood, glass, rubber, dry cloth, paper or similar materials, there will be no passage of electricity, but if a metal rod is substituted, a current will flow from the body of higher potential to the other. In this case the metal rod or wire is a conductor of electricity. All metals and substances such as acid, water and the various liquids (except oils) conduct electricity so well as to be termed "conductors," though it is harder for the electrical current to flow through some kinds of metal than it is for it to pass through others. Copper, aluminum and silver are very good electrical conductors, steel or iron come next in order, while some alloys, such as German silver, offer considerable resistance to the flow of current.

Contact Breaker.—A mechanical switch for closing and opening a circuit in rapid succession.

Controller.—A manually or automatically operated device for altering the current flow. Such a device may be interposed between a battery of an electric automobile and the driving motor to vary the speed and power of the latter.

Copper.—A reddish-brown metal widely used for electric wires and terminals because of its excellent conductivity. It is employed in many forms of primary battery as the plate of opposite polarity to the zinc element.

Corrosion.—The attack of metal parts by acid from the electrolyte; it is the result from lack of cleanliness.

Counter E.M.F.—A potential difference or voltage in a circuit opposed to the main voltage and resisting the flow of the latter. When charging a storage battery, the battery voltage is counter E.M.F. to that of the charging line.

Cover.—The rubber cover which closes each individnal cell; it is sometimes flanged for sealing compound to insure an effective seal.

Current.—The passage of electricity through any piece of apparatus *is termed* a current. If the flowing of the electrical charge is continuous *it is* called a direct current. If the charges are not continuous

but flow always in the same direction it is termed a "pulsating" current. If an electrical charge flowing in one direction is followed by another charge flowing in the opposite direction, an "alternating" current is produced.

Cutout.—An electro-magnetic mechanism that automatically performs the same function of opening a closed circuit that a hand-operated switch does.

Discharge.—The flow of electric current from a battery through a circuit. The opposite of "charge."

Distilled Water.—The condensed water vapor or steam obtained by cooling vapors given off from boiling water. This will remove the impurities, such as salts, etc. These remain in the still as residue, only chemically pure water being vaporized.

Dynamo.—An electrical machine capable of producing current and distributing this current as desired, providing the current is sufficiently strong to overcome the resistance to its motion of the parts comprising the external circuit.

Electrolyte.—The fluid in a battery cell, consisting of specially pure sulphuric acid diluted with pure water in some cases and an alkaline solution in others.

Element.—One positive group and one negative group with separators, assembled together.

Electric Contact.—The joining of two conductors so a current can pass from one to the other.

Electrode.—The terminal of any open circuit.

Electrolysis.—The separation of a chemical compound into its constituents, by the action of an electric current. It cannot take place unless this compound is a conductor of electricity.

Electro-Magnet.—A bar of iron magnetized by passing a current of electricity through a coil of insulated wire wrapped around it. When the current is interrupted the iron bar or core piece ceases to possess magnetic qualities.

Electrical Distribution.—The action of an electrical machine in regulating the distribution of electricity may be considered to be the same as that of a pump which takes water from one tank and supplies it to another at a higher level. If for these reservoirs we consider bodies insulated from each other, we can, with an electrical generator, take electricity from one that has been overcharged and supply it to another which is undercharged.

Electricity.—A force that no one knows the exact nature of. To form some conception of this force, it is well to consider that we are able to place various bodies in different electrical relations. A stick of sealing wax or a hard rubber comb rubbed on a coat sleeve will attract bits of paper, feathers and other light objects. The sealing wax or rub-

ber is said to be charged with electricity which has been produced by friction against the coat sleeve. Electricity may be produced by mechanical, chemical or thermal action.

Electrical Charge.—Any body charged with electricity may be considered one whose surface is supplied with either an overcharge or undercharge of electricity. The overcharged body always tends to discharge to the undercharged body in order to equalize a difference in pressure existing between them.

Filling Plug.—The plug which fits in and closes the orifice of the filling tube in the cell cover.

Flushing.—Replacing electrolyte in lead-plate cells with acid instead of distilled water.

Flooding.—Overflowing through the filling tube. With the usual vent this can occur only when a battery is charged with the filling plug out.

Freshening Charge.—A charge given to a battery which has been standing idle, to insure that it is in a fully charged condition.

Forming.—The process of making storage-battery plates from lead sheets by a series of charging and discharging operations.

Fuse Box or Fuse Block.—A non-conducting container for safety fuses, usually of porcelain, slate or marble.

Fuse.—An electrical safety valve to prevent an overload or passage of excessive amounts of current through a circuit. These are made of fusable lead alloy wire, which melts or "blows" if too much current is passed through it, thus breaking the circuit in which it is placed.

Gassing.—The bubbling of the electrolyte caused by the rising of gas set free toward the end of the charge.

Generator System.—An equipment including a generator for automatically recharging the battery, in contradistinction to a straight storage system, where the battery has to be removed to be recharged or coupled to an external current source.

Glass.—A fused mixture of silicate of various oxides, and a very good non-conductor of electricity if dry. Not affected chemically by most acids or alkali. May be made either opaque or transparent, depending upon coloring matter added. A very common, brittle substance, widely used for storage battery and primary cell jars, insulators and containing-vessels for all kinds of liquids.

Gravity.—A contraction of the term "specific gravity," which means the density compared to water as a standard.

Grid.—The metal framework of a plate supporting the active material, and provided with a lug for conducting the current and for attachment to the strap.

Group.—A set of plates, either positive or negative, joined to a strap. *Groups do not include* separators.

H_2O.—*Chemical* symbol for water.

Hard Rubber.—A rubber compound that has been hardened by heat treatment so it has greater stiffness than rubber in its natural form, and will keep its shape indefinitely after forming. This material is very brittle and not very strong. It is an excellent insulator of electricity, and as it is not affected by sulphuric acid it is widely used for cell jars.

Hold-Down Clips.—Brackets for the attachment of bolts for holding the battery securely in position on the car.

Horse-Power.—The accepted unit of mechanical work. The ability to move 550 pounds one foot in one second or 33,000 pounds one foot in one minute. An electrical horse-power is 746 watts.

H.P.—Abbreviation for horse-power.

Hydrogen.—One of the basic elements existing as a gas under natural conditions. It may be liquefied by the simultaneous application of great pressure and abstraction of heat. It is the lightest known substance. The chemical symbol is H.

Hydrogen Flame.—A very hot and clean flame of hydrogen gas and compressed air used for making burned connections.

Hydrogen Generator.—An apparatus for generating hydrogen gas for lead-burning.

Hydrometer.—An instrument for measuring the specific gravity of the electrolyte.

Hydrometer Syringe.—A glass barrel enclosing an hydrometer and provided with a rubber bulb for drawing up electrolyte.

Induction.—The creation of a current in a conductor not connected to a source of electricity by the juxtaposition of one that is carrying the current.

Induction-Magnetic.—The magnetization of any magnetic substance, such as iron or steel, by placing it in a magnetic field but not in actual contact with the energizing magnet.

Insulating Tape.—A textile fabric impregnated with insulating compound of an adhesive nature. Used to cover bare spots in insulated wires, re-enforce insulation, and for protecting joints where wires are joined together.

Insulating Varnish.—Shellac or sealing wax dissolved in alcohol, or gum copal dissolved in ether, may be used as a varnish for insulating purposes.

Insulator.—Materials such as wood, glass, rubber, etc., and air, conduct electricity so badly as to be termed insulators. What would normally be an insulator to a current of low potential may be ruptured by a current of higher potential or pressure which can break down the resistance.

Iron Oxide.—Commonly known as "rust." It is packed in steel *pockets, which are assembled into negative plates of Edison Storage Battery. Expressed chemically as* FeO.

Jar.—The hard rubber container holding the element and electrolyte.

KOH.—Chemical symbol for caustic potash or potassium hydrate.

Lead.—An abundant and widely used metal of bluish-white color, and one of the softest and heaviest of metals. It is not acted upon by sulphuric acid unless an electric current is passed through it. It forms the main part of most storage-battery plates, either as a metallic lead or as a lead oxide.

Lead-Burning.—Making a joint by melting together the metal of the parts to be joined.

Lead Oxide.—Material on plates when a cell is discharged according to some theories of storage-battery action. This is expressed chemically as PbO, differing from peroxide only because there is less oxygen combined with the lead.

Lead Peroxide.—The active material on positive plates of lead batteries after charging. Expressed chemically as PbO_2.

Lead Sulphate.—Material on storage-battery plates when cells are discharged, caused by absorption of sulphate from the electrolyte. Expressed chemically as $PbSO_4$.

Lime, Slaked.—First quicklime is obtained by burning limestone, chalk or marble in kilns and afterward removing its caustic properties by watering it and allowing it to remain in the air for a time. This is used in battery compartments of electric vehicles to neutralize spilled acid, as it is of an alkaline nature.

Litharge.—A yellow or reddish oxide of lead that is partially fused.

Local Action.—Wasteful oxidization of zinc in a primary battery when it is not in use, or abnormal sulphation of storage-battery plates due to impurities in the electrolyte.

Lug.—The extension from the top frame of each plate, connecting the plate to the strap or busbar.

Magnetism.—This is a property possessed by certain substances, and is manifested by the ability to attract and repel other materials susceptible to its effects. When this phenomena is manifested by a conductor or wire through which a current of electricity is flowing, it is termed "electro-magnetism." Magnetism and electricity are closely related, each being capable of producing the other.

Magnetic Substances.—Only certain substances show magnetic properties, these being iron, nickel, cobalt and their alloys. The earliest known substance possessing magnetic properties was a stone or iron ore first found in Asia Minor. It was called the "lodestone," or leading stone, because of its tendency, if arranged so it could move freely, of pointing one particular portion toward the north.

Magnetic Attraction.—If the north pole of one magnet is brought near the south pole of another, a strong attraction will exist between

them, this depending upon the size of the magnets used and the air-gap separating the poles. Magnets will attract all magnetic substances.

Magnetic Repulsion.—If the south pole of one magnet is brought close to the end of the same polarity of the other there will be a pronounced repulsion of the forces. The like poles of magnets will repel each other because of the obvious impossibility of uniting two influences or forces of practically equal strength but flowing in opposite directions. The unlike poles of magnets attract each other because the force is flowing in the same direction.

Magnetic Flow.—The flow of magnetism is through the magnet from south to north, and the circuit is completed by the flow of magnetic influence through the air-gap or metal armature bridging it from the north to the south pole.

Maximum Gravity.—The highest specific gravity which the electrolyte will reach by continued charging, indicating that no acid remains with the plates.

Meters.—Most of the electrical measuring instruments depend upon the principle of electro-magnetism or induction. These measuring instruments are made in portable and switchboard types. The windings in an instrument designed to measure current quantity or amperage are usually of coarse wires, while the windings of an instrument to measure electro-motive force or voltage will be of finer wire. The gauge used to measure current quantity is called an ampere meter or ammeter, while that used to measure current pressure is a volt meter.

Mica.—An insulator of natural mineral derivation that will stand considerable heat. Not suited for use with high-potential currents, because it is apt to contain impurities of a metallic nature. Commonly known as "isinglass."

Motor.—A machine that is capable of delivering current in one direction when driven by mechanical power and which will produce mechanical energy if electric current is passed through the winding in a reverse direction.

Motor-Generator.—An electrical machine that may be used either as a current producer or for generating electricity if driven by mechanical means, or as a power producer if driven by electrical means.

Negative Pole.—The terminal of a current-generator to which the current flows after leaving the outer circuit.

Nickel.—A silver white malleable and ductile metal, that can be applied to others by thin surface coating through an electro-deposition or plating process.

Nickel-Hydrate.—A green powder used as the active material in the positive plates of the Edison storage battery.

Ohm.—The ohm is the unit by which resistance is judged. ***Everything has electrical resistance.*** Some elements have very little, such as

a short length of good conductor; others have so much as to form a most effectual barrier to the passage of the current, these being commonly known as insulators.

Ohms Law.—The fundamental rules expressing the relation between voltage, amperage and resistance. It may be expressed thus: the current strength (C) is equal to the voltage or electro-motive force (E) divided by the resistance (R), or $C = E \div R$. Naturally, the voltage is equal to the current strength multiplied by the resistance, or $E = C \times R$. The resistance is equal to the voltage divided by the amperage, or $R = E \div C$.

Oil of Vitriol.—Commercial name for concentrated sulphuric acid (1.835 specific gravity). This is never used in a battery, and would quickly ruin it.

Oxidization.—The chemical combination of oxygen with any substance. Iron rust is ferrous oxide, and has been caused by oxidization.

Oxygen.—One of the most active of the elements that naturally exist as a gas, though it may be liquefied. Owing to its great affinity for various substances, it is not found free or uncombined. The chemical symbol is O.

Pb.—Chemical symbol for lead.

Paraffine Wax.—A white substance produced by distillation of crude petroleum, and one of the best insulators known.

Pickling.—The process of cleaning metal by dipping in an acid solution. This solution is known as a "pickle."

Plates.—Metallic grids supporting active material. They are alternately positive (brown) and negative (gray).

Polarity.—A difference in electrical condition. The positive terminal of a cell or battery, or the positive wire of a circuit, is said to have positive polarity; the negative, negative polarity.

Post.—The portion of the strap extending through the cell cover, by means of which connection is made to the adjoining cell or to the car circuit.

Positive Pole.—The terminal of a current-generator from which the current is intended to flow to the outer circuit.

Potassium Hydrate.—An alkaline substance combined with water to serve as the electrolyte in the Edison storage battery. Commonly known as caustic potash. Expressed chemically as KOH.

Potential or E.M.F. (Electro-Motive Force).—The greater the difference in the quantities of the electrical charge the greater the tendency to reach the state of equilibrium. This difference in electrical conditions, or amount of electrical charge, is termed "difference of potential," and high or low potential, or "electro-motive force," in any electrical system indicates a large or small difference of charge or electrical condition at different parts. This is measured in volts.

Rectifier.—Any device capable of changing alternating current to one having the properties of direct current.

Resistance.—Material (usually lamps or wire) of low conductivity inserted in a circuit to retard the flow of current. By varying the resistance, the amount of current can be regulated.

Resistance, External.—The resistance of those parts of the circuit outside of the dynamo or battery producing the current.

Resistance, Internal.—The resistance of the windings of a generator or that of the electrolyte and separators of a storage battery as distinguished from that of the parts comprising the outer circuit.

Resistance, Ohmic.—Resistance measured in ohms is a true resistance.

Return, or Ground.—The conductor which is supposed to carry the current to its starting-point after it has passed through parts of the outer circuit. In an automobile lighting, starting and ignition system the metallic chassis frame is often used as a "ground return" to the battery. In large power installations the earth is actually used as a return conductor.

Rheostat.—A device having coils of different resistance that can be brought into action progressively to control electric-current flow, as when charging batteries.

Rubber Sheets.—Thin, perforated hard-rubber sheets used in combination with the wood separators in some types of batteries. They are placed between the grooved side of the wooden separators and the positive plate.

Sealing Compound.—The acid-proof compound used to seal the cover to the jar.

Sealing Nut.—The notched round nut which screws on the post and clamps the cell cover in place in Exide batteries.

Sediment.—Active material which gradually falls from the plates and accumulates in the space below the plates provided for that purpose.

Series Winding.—A method of winding electric machines where the armature winding is in series with the field winding. All current produced in the armature coils must pass through the field coils as well before reaching the external circuit.

Separators.—Sheets of grooved wood, specially treated, inserted between the positive and negative plates to keep them out of contact.

Shellac.—A resinous, vegetable substance, soluble in alcohol, and having good insulating qualities.

Short Circuit.—A metallic connection between the positive and negative plates within a cell. The plates may be in actual contact or material may lodge and bridge across. If the separators are in good condition, a short circuit is unlikely to occur.

Shunt Winding.—A method of winding electric machines where the

armature coils are in parallel with the field coils. Only a portion of the current produced in the armature passes through the field coil.

Spacers.—Wood strips used in some types to separate the cells in the case and divided to provide a space for the tie bolts.

Specific Gravity.—The density of the electrolyte compared to water as a standard. It indicates the strength and is measured by the hydrometer.

Starvation.—The result of giving insufficient charge in relation to the amount of discharge, resulting in poor service and injury to the battery.

Steel.—An alloy composed of iron and carbon in its simplest forms. It contains from .05 to 1.80 per cent. of carbon. It is a variety of iron that can be hardened and softened by heat treatment, as well as having all the properties of iron as regards malleability, etc. It forms an important part of Edison Storage Battery elements and container.

Strap.—The leaden casting or small busbar to which the plates of a group are joined.

Sulphated.—The condition of plates having an abnormal amount of lead sulphate caused by "starvation," or by allowing battery to remain discharged for lengthy periods.

Switch.—A switch interposed in an electrical conductor will, when opened, leave an air-gap in this conductor that offers so much resistance to the flow of current that the electricity cannot pass. Closing the switch so that the continuity of the conductor is re-established will enable the current to flow.

Tie Bolts.—Bolts which, in some types, extend through the battery case between the cells and clamp the jars in position.

Time Cutout.—Cutout devices which automatically break the charging circuit of storage batteries when the current has passed through a sufficient time to insure proper charging. A time cutout is merely a switch operated by clock work.

Transformer.—A form of induction coil to "step up" or increase voltage or to "step down" or decrease voltage. As a rule, when the potential is increased the amperage or current is reduced and vice versa. An ignition coil transforms a current of low voltage and strong amperage to one of high potential and very low amperage. A transformer can also change high-voltage current to one of low potential and secure an increase in amperage.

Top Nut.—The hexagon nut which, in batteries with bolted connections, screws on the post and holds the connectors and sealing nut in place.

Vaseline.—One of the residues left after distilling off the lighter *constituents* of crude petroleum oil. Used as a coating for brass or *copper terminal* screws on storage batteries to prevent corrosion or

formation of verdigris by the chemical action of the electrolyte on the metal.

Vent.—Special fittings placed in the cover of sealed battery cells to allow passage of gas and prevent electrolyte from splashing out.

Voltage.—Electrical potential or pressure, of which the volt is the unit.

Watt.—A watt is a unit of quantity, or amount of electric energy, and corresponds to a current of one ampere at a pressure of one volt. Thus a watt is a volt-ampere-second, and 746 watts indicate an amount of electrical energy equal to one mechanical horse-power. A kilowatt is 1,000 watts.

Zinc.—A silvery white metal having a crystalline fracture and somewhat similar to lead in many respects, though not nearly so heavy. This material is widely used in primary batteries as the active plate, but is seldom made into storage-battery plates.

INDEX

PAGE

A

Acid, Definition of..... 190
Acid Electrolyte Proportions.. 63
Acidometer 190
Acid, Properties of..... 63
Action of Depolarizer..... 15
Action of Primary Cell..... 13
Active Material 190
Advantages of "Iron Clad" Exide Plate 44
Alkaline Battery, Edison..... 26
Alkaline Electrolyte 66
Alloy 190
Alternating Current 190
Ampere 190
Ampere, Definition of..... 17
Ampere-Hour 190
Ampere-Hour Meter, Use of.. 151
Anode 190
Antimony 190
Antimony Alloys for Grids... 38
Apparatus for Making Cadmium Tests 61
Arc-Burning 190
Arc-Burning Outfit 83
Asphaltum 190
Automobile Batteries, Ignition 124
Automobile Batteries, Power.. 136
Automobile Batteries, Starting 127

B

Batteries for Auto Work..... 23
Batteries for Draw-Bridge Operation 185
Batteries for Electric Automobiles 136

PAGE

Batteries for Electric Launches 177
Batteries for Isolated Lighting 140
Batteries for Mine Lamp.... 187
Batteries for Stand-by and Booster Work 180
Batteries for Starting Engines 129
Batteries for Street Railway Cars 167
Batteries for Submarine Boat. 170
Batteries for Switch and Signal Work 179
Batteries for Yacht Lighting.. 176
Batteries of Locomotives..... 162
Battery 190
Battery Capacity, Loss of... 56
Battery Capacity, Rules Governing 25
Battery-Charging Apparatus.. 99
Battery-Charging Methods ... 91
Battery Charging, Direct Current for 94
Battery Charging in Garages. 93
Battery Defects Summarized.. 90
Battery for Train Lighting... 157
Battery Repair Tools 74
Battery, Secondary 18
Battery Shifts Gears..... 134
Battery Terminals 190
Buckling 190
Burning-Strip 190
Busbar 190

C

Cadmium Readings, Value of. 60
Carbon 191
Carboy 191

	PAGE
Carboy Stand	101
Care of Lead Batteries	81
Case	191
Cathode	191
Cause of Sulphation	58
Cell	191
Cell Cleanliness, Effect of Sediment	56
Cell Connector	191
Central Station	191
Charge	191
Charge Rate	191
Charging Resistance, Lamps for	109
Charging Vehicle Batteries	117
Chart of Electrolyte Mixtures	64
Chemical Action, Edison Battery	27
Chemical Action, Reversible	18
Chemical Change	191
Chemical Change in Lead Plates	21
Chemical Element	191
Chemical Production of Current	13
Chloride Plates	40
Circuit Breaker	192
Circuits	192
Combination Batteries	38
Commercial Type Edison Cell	46
Compound Winding	192
Conductor	192
Contact Breaker	192
Controller	192
Copper	192
Copper-Lead Storage Cell	33
Corrosion	192
Counter E.M.F.	192
Couple Type Storage Battery	29
Cover	192
Cure of Sulphation	58
Current	192
Current by Chemical Action	13
Cut-Out	193

D	PAGE
Dangers of Flushing	57
Defects, in Storage Battery	53
Delco-Lite Outfit	155
Depolarizer, Use of	15
Directions for Lead-Burning	87
Discharge	193
Dismantling Exide Cells	69
Dismantling Gould Cells	76
Distilled Water	193
Double Seal Exide Cover	69
Draw-Bridge Batteries	185
Dry Battery	15
Dry-Cell Connections	16
Dry-Cell Depolarizer	15
Dry-Cell Disadvantages	17
Dynamo	193
Dynamo for Train Lighting	158

E	
Early Planté Cell	21
Edison Cell Electrolyte	66
Edison Negative Plate	48
Edison Plates	27
Edison Positive Plate	47
Edison Steel Cell Jar	50
Edison Storage Battery	26
Edison Storage Battery, Commercial Type	46
Electric Contact	193
Electric Launch Batteries	177
Electric Vehicle Batteries	137
Electrical Charge	194
Electrical Distribution	193
Electricity	193
Electricity by Chemical Action	13
Electrode	193
Electro-Magnet	193
Electrolysis	193
Electrolyte	193
Electrolyte, for Edison Cells	66
Electrolyte, Making	83
Electrolytic Rectifier	105

PAGE

ent 193
ent, Replacing 77
ıe-Starting Batteries 129
ıtials in Battery Care.... 53
› Batteries, Repair of... 68
› Double Seal 69
› Single Seal 69

F

›, or Pasted Plates..... 23
› Plate Grid 38
› Type Plates..... 38
ing Mine Locomotive Ca-
ity 163
g Plug 194
ing 194
ing 194
ing, Dangers of..... 57
ed Plates, Planté..... 22
ing 194
ening Charge 194
..... 194
Box 194

G

ɜenerator, Action of..... 85
ɜenerator, Hydrogen..... 85
Shifting by Battery.... 134
ng 194
·ator System 194
..... 194
l Battery Repairs 76
l Plates, Manufacture of. 35
ty 194
..... 194
, Alloys for..... 38
› 194

H

Rubber 195
Down Clips 195
-power 195
to Find Cells in Poor
lition 59

PAGE

How to Use Lead-Burning Outfits 87
Hydrogen 195
Hydrogen Flame 195
Hydrogen Gas-Burning Outfit. 84
Hydrogen Gas, Generation of. 84
Hydrogen Generator 195
Hydrometer 195
Hydrometer and Its Use..... 101
Hydrometer Syringe 195

I

Ignition Batteries 124
Ignition Systems 124
Illuminating Gas—Oxygen Outfit 86
Induction 195
Induction, Magnetic 195
Insulating Tape 195
Insulating Varnish 195
Insulator 195
Iron Clad Exide Battery 42
Iron Oxide 195
Isolated Lighting Plants 140

J

Jar of Edison Battery..... 50
Joining Dry Cells..... 16

L

Lamp-Bank Resistance 109
Lead 196
Lead Batteries, General Care of 81
Lead-Burning 196
Lead-Burning, Instructions for 87
Lead-Burning Outfits 81
Lead Oxide 196
Lead Peroxide 196
Lead Plates, Chemical Change in 21
Lead Sulphate 196
Lighting Battery Installation. 148

PAGE

Lighting Battery, Operation of 147
Lighting Battery, Rules for Selection 145
Lime, Slaked 196
Litharge 196
Local Action 196
Locomotive Power Batteries.. 162
Loss of Battery Capacity ... 56
Lug 196

M

Magnetic Attraction 196
Magnetic Flow 197
Magnetic Repulsion 197
Magnetic Substances 196
Magnetism 196
Making Electrolyte 63
Making Planté Plates 35
Marine Applications, Miscellaneous 176
Maximum Gravity 197
Mechanical Forming, Planté Plates 37
Mercury Arc Rectifier..... 106
Meters 197
Mica 197
Mine-Lamp Battery 187
Mine-Locomotive Figuring.... 163
Miscellaneous Marine Applications 176
Motor 197
Motor Generator 197
Multiple Connection 16

N

Negative Plate, Edison 48
Negative Pole 197
Nickel 197
Nickel Hydrate 197

O

Ohm 197
Ohm's Law 198

PAGE

Oil of Vitriol 198
Open Cell Type, Storage Cell. 29
Oxidization 198
Oxygen 198

P

Paraffine Wax 198
Pasted Plates, Faure 23
Pickling 198
Planté, or Formed Plates..... 22
Planté Process Plates, Making 35
Plate-Burning Rack 88
Plate Deterioration, Cause of. 60
Plates 198
Plates of Edison Cell..... 27
Polarity 198
Positive Plates, Edison..... 47
Positive Pole 198
Post 198
Potassium Hydrate 198
Potential, or E.M.F..... 198
Primary Cell, Dry Type..... 15
Primary Cell, Simple..... 13
Principles of Storage Battery. 18

R

Railway Switch and Signal Service 179
Rectifier 199
Rectifier, Electrolytic 105
Rectifier, Mercury-Arc 106
Rectifier, Wagner 108
Repairing Exide Batteries ... 68
Repairing Gould Sealed Types 76
Repairing Willard Battery.... 78
Replacing Gould Element.... 77
Resistance 199
Resistance, External 199
Resistance, Internal 199
Resistance, Ohmic 199
Resistance, Water 110
Return, or Ground 199
Reversible Chemical Action.. 18
Rheostat 199

PAGE

ɔer Sheets 199
s Governing Battery Ca-
city 25

S

ng Compound 199
ng Exide Cells 72
ng Nut 199
ɔd Type Storage Battery. 29
nent 199
nent in Cells..... 56
rator Functions 50
rators 199
rator Types. 50
s Connection 16
s Multiple Connection... 16
s Winding 199
ac 199
; Circuit 199
t Winding 199
le Primary Cell 13
le Storage Battery 18
e-Seal Exide Cover..... 69
-Charge Cure for Sulphate 58
ɔrs 200
fic Gravity 200
fic Gravity, Baumé Con-
ɔsion 55
l-by Batteries 180
l for Carboys 101
ing and Lighting Bat-
ies 127
ing-Battery Location 130
ation 200
..... 200
ge Batteries, Types of.. 29
ge Batteries Using Other
n Lead Plates 30
ge Batteries, Winter Care
..... 112
ge Battery Defects 53
re Battery for Ignition.. 124
e Battery History 19

PAGE

Storage Battery Locomotives. 162
Storage Battery, Principles of 18
Straightening Buckled Plates. 70
Strap 200
Street Railway Car Batteries. 167
Submarine Boat Batteries.... 170
Sulphate 200
Sulphation, Cause and Cure.. 58
Switch 200
Switchboard for Lighting.... 149

T

Taking Cadmium Reading.... 60
Tank Type Storage Battery.. 29
Tie Bolts 200
Time Cut-Out 200
Tools for Battery Repairs.... 74
Top Nut 200
Train-Lighting Battery 157
Train-Lighting Dynamo 158
Transformer 200
Types of Storage Batteries... 29

U

Use of Hydrometer 101

V

Vaseline 200
Vehicle Batteries, Charging.. 117
Vent 201
Vibrator Rectifier, Westing-
house 96
Vitriol 198
Voltage 201
Volt, Definition of 17

W

Wagner Rectifier 108
Water Resistance 110
Water Used in Electrolyte.... 65
Watt 201

PAGE

Watt, Definition of 17
Westinghouse Vibrator Rectifier 96
Willard Battery Repairs 78
Winter Care of Batteries..... 112
Wood Separators, Care of..... 51
Wood Separators, Faults of... 70

PAGE

X

Yacht-Lighting Batteries 176

Z

Zinc 201
Zinc Plates for Storage Batteries 33

CATALOGUE

of the latest

Practical, Scientific, Technica

and

Automobile Books

PRACTICAL BOOKS FOR PRACTICAL MEN

Each Book in this Catalogue is written by an Expert and is written so you can understand it

PUBLISHED BY

THE NORMAN W. HENLEY PUBLISHING CO.

132 Nassau Street, New York, U. S. A.

Established 1890

☛ **Any Book in this Catalogue sent prepaid on receipt of price.**

INDEX

	PAGE
Air Brakes	20, 23
Arithmetic	13, 24, 31
Automobile Books	3, 4, 5
Automobile Charts	5, 6
Automobile Ignition Systems	5
Automobile Lighting	5
Automobile Questions and Answers	4
Automobile Repairing	4
Automobile Starting Systems	5
Automobile Trouble Charts	5
Bevel Gear	18
Boiler Room Chart	8
Brazing	6
Cams	18
Carburetion Trouble Chart	6
Change Gear	18
Charts	5, 7
Coal	21
Combustion	21
Compressed Air	8
Concrete	9
Concrete for Farm Use	10
Concrete for Shop Use	10
Cosmetics	26
Cyclecars	5
Dictionary	11
Dies	11, 12
Drawing	12
Drawing for Plumbers	27
Drop Forging	12
Dynamo Building	13
Electric Switchboards	13, 15
Electric Toy Making	14
Electric Wiring	13, 14, 16
Electricity	13, 14, 15, 16
E-T Air Brake	23
Factory Management	16
Ford Automobile	3
Ford Trouble Chart	6
Formulas and Recipes	28
Fuel	16
Gas Construction	18
Gas Engines	17, 18
Gas Tractor	33
Gearing and Cams	18, 19
Heating	31
Horse Power Chart	8
Hot Water Heating	31, 32
House Wiring	14, 16
Hydraulics	19
Ignition Systems	5
Ignition Trouble Chart	5
India Rubber	29
Interchangeable Manufacturing	23
Inventions	19
Knots	19
Lathe Work	20
Link Motions	21

	PAGE
Liquid Air	20
Locomotive Boilers	21
Locomotive Breakdowns	22
Locomotive Engineering	20, 21, 22, 23
Machinist Books	23, 24, 25
Manual Training	25
Marine Engineering	26
Marine Gasoline Engines	18
Mechanical Drawing	12
Mechanical Movements	24
Metal Work	11, 12
Motorcycles	5, 6
Patents	19
Pattern Making	26
Perfumery	26
Perspective	12
Plumbing	27, 28
Punches	12
Producer Gas	18
Questions and Answers on Automobile	4
Questions on Heating	32
Railroad Accidents	22
Railroad Charts	8
Recipe Book	28
Repairing Automobiles	4
Rope Work	11
Rubber	28
Rubber Stamps	28
Saw Filing	30
Saws, Management of	30
Sheet Metal Works	11, 12
Shop Construction	29
Shop Management	29
Shop Practice	29
Shop Tools	29
Sketching Paper	12
Soldering	9
Splices and Rope Work	11
Steam Engineering	30, 31
Steam Heating	31, 32
Steel	32
Submarine Chart	9
Switch Boards	13, 14
Tapers	29
Telegraphy, Wireless	14
Telephone	14
Thread Cutting	29
Tool Making	29
Toy Making	14
Train Rules	29
Tractive Power Chart	9
Tractor, Gas	33
Vacuum Heating	32
Valve Setting	29
Ventilation	32
Waterproofing	14
Wireless Telegraphy	14
Wiring	13, 14
Wiring Diagrams	14

Any of these books promptly sent prepaid to any address in the world on receipt of price.

How to remit.—By Postal Money Order, Express Money Order, Bank Draft or Registered Letter.

AUTOMOBILES AND MOTORCYCLES

HE MODERN GASOLINE AUTOMOBILE—ITS DESIGN, CONSTRUCTION, MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

The latest and most complete treatise on the Gasoline Automobile ever issued. Written in simple language by a recognized authority, familiar with every branch of the automobile industry. Free from technical terms. Everything is explained so simply that anyone of average intelligence may gain a comprehensive knowledge of the gasoline automobile. The information is up-to-date and includes, in addition to an exposition of principles of construction and description of all types of automobiles and their components, valuable money-saving hints on the care and operation of motorcars propelled by internal combustion engines. Among some of the subjects treated might be mentioned: Torpedo and other symmetrical body forms designed to reduce air resistance; sleeve valve, rotary valve and other types of silent motors; increasing tendency to favor worm-gear power-transmission; universal application of magneto ignition; development of automobile electric-lighting systems; block motors; underslung chassis; application of practical self-starters; long stroke and offset cylinder motors; latest automatic lubrication systems; silent chains for valve operation and change-speed gearing; the use of front wheel brakes and many other detail refinements. By a careful study of the pages of this book one can gain practical knowledge of automobile construction that will save time, money and worry. The book tells you just what to do, how and when to do it. Nothing has been omitted, no detail has been slighted. Every part of the automobile, its equipment, accessories, tools, supplies, spare parts necessary, etc., have been discussed comprehensively. If you are or intend to become a motorist, or are in any way interested in the modern Gasoline Automobile, this is a book you cannot afford to be without. Over 850 6x9 pages—and more than 600 new and specially made detail illustrations, as well as many full-page and double-page plates, showing all parts of the automobile. Including 12 large folding plates. Price **$2.50**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"It is the best book on the Automobile seen up to date."—J. H. Pile, Associate Editor *Automobile Trade Journal.*

"Every Automobile Owner has use for a book of this character."—*The Tradesman.*

"This book is superior to any treatise heretofore published on the subject."—*The Inventive Age.*

"We know of no other volume that is so complete in all its departments, and in which the wide field of automobile construction with its mechanical intricacies is so plainly handled, both in the text and in the matter of illustrations."—*The Motorist.*

"The book is very thorough, a careful examination failing to disclose any point in connection with the automobile, its care and repair, to have been overlooked."—*Iron Age.*

"Mr. Pagé has done a great work, and benefit to the Automobile Field."—W. C. Hasford, Mgr. Y. M. C. A. Automobile School, Boston, Mass.

"It is just the kind of a book a motorist needs if he wants to understand his car."—*American Thresherman.*

HE MODEL T FORD CAR, ITS CONSTRUCTION, OPERATION AND REPAIR. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

This is a complete instruction book. All parts of the Ford Model T Car are described and illustrated; the construction is fully described and operating principles made clear to everyone. Every Ford owner needs this practical book. You don't have to guess about the construction or where the trouble is, as it shows how to take all parts apart and how to locate and fix all faults. The writer, Mr. Pagé, has operated a Ford car for four years and writes from actual knowledge. Among the contents are: 1. The Ford Car. Its Parts and Their Functions. 2. The Engine and Auxiliary Groups. How the Engine Works—The Fuel Supply System—The Carburetor—Making the Ignition Spark—Cooling and Lubrication. 3. Details of Chassis. Change Speed Gear—Power Transmission—Differential Gear Action—Steering Gear—Front Axle—Frame and Springs—Brakes. 4. How to Drive and Care for the Ford. The Control System Explained—Starting the Motor—Driving the Car—Locating Roadside Troubles—Tire Repairs—Oiling the Chassis—Winter Care of Car. 5. Systematic Location of Troubles and Remedies. Faults in Engine—Faults in Carburetor—Ignition Troubles—Cooling and Lubrication System Defects—Adjustment of Transmission Gear—General Chassis Repairs. 95 illustrations. 300 pages. Two large folding plates. Price. **$1.00**

AUTOMOBILE REPAIRING MADE EASY. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

A comprehensive, practical exposition of every phase of modern automobile repairing practice. Outlines every process incidental to motor car restoration. Gives plans for workshop construction, suggestions for equipment, power needed, machinery and tools necessary to carry on the business successfully. Tells how to overhaul and repair all parts of all automobiles. Everything is explained so simply that motorists and students can acquire a full working knowledge of automobile repairing. This work starts with the engine, then considers carburetion, ignition, cooling and lubrication systems. The clutch, change speed gearing and transmission system are considered in detail. Contains instructions for repairing all types of axles, steering gears and other chassis parts. Many tables, short cuts in figuring and rules of practice are given for the mechanic. Explains fully valve and magneto timing, "tuning" engines, systematic location of trouble, repair of ball and roller bearings, shop kinks, first aid to injured and a multitude of subjects of interest to all in the garage and repair business.

This book contains special instructions on electric starting, lighting and ignition systems, tire repairing and rebuilding, autogenous welding, brazing and soldering, heat treatment of steel, latest timing practice, eight and twelve-cylinder motors, etc. 5¼x8. Cloth. 10[illegible] pages, 1,000 illustrations, 11 folding plates. Price . . . . . $3.0[illegible]

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"'Automobile Repairing Made Easy' is the best book on the subject I have ever see[illegible] and the only book I ever saw that is of any value in a garage."—Fred Jeffrey, Martins[illegible] burg, Neb.

"I wish to thank you for sending me a copy of 'Automobile Repairing Made Easy.' I do not think it could be excelled."—S. W. Gisriel, Director of Instruction, Y. M. C. A. Philadelphia, Pa.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS RELATING TO MODERN AUTOMOBILE CONSTRUCTION, DRIVING AND REPAIR. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

A practical self-instructor for students, mechanics and motorists, consisting of thirty-six lessons in the form of questions and answers, written with special reference to the requirements of the non-technical reader desiring easily understood, explanatory matter relating to all branches of automobiling. The subject-matter is absolutely correct and explained in simple language. If you can't answer all of the following questions, you need this work. The answers to these and nearly 2000 more are to be found in its pages. Give the name of all important parts of an automobile and describe their functions? Describe action of latest types of kerosene carburetors? What is the difference between a "double" ignition system and a "dual" ignition system? Name parts of an induction coil? How are valves timed? What is an electric motor starter and how does it work? What are advantages of worm driven gearing? Name all important types of ball and roller bearings? What is a "three-quarter" floating axle? What is a two-speed axle? What is the Vulcan electric gear shift? Name the causes of lost power in automobiles? Describe all noises due to deranged mechanism and give causes? How can you adjust a carburetor by the color of the exhaust gases? What causes "popping" in the carburetor? What tools and supplies are needed to equip a car? How do you drive various makes of cars? What is a differential lock and where is it used? Name different systems of wire wheel construction, etc., etc.? A popular work at a popular price. 5¼x7½. Cloth. 650 pages, 350 illustrations, 3 folding plates. Price $1.50

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"If you own a car—get this book."—*The Glassworker.*

"Mr. Pagé has the faculty of making difficult subjects plain and understandable."—*Bristol Press.*

"We can name no writer better qualified to prepare a book of instruction on automobiles than Mr. Victor W. Pagé."—*Scientific American.*

"The best automobile catechism that has appeared."—*Automobile Topics.*

"There are few men, even with long experience, who will not find this book useful. Great pains have been taken to make it accurate. Special recommendation must be given to the illustrations, which have been made specially for the work. Such excellent books as this greatly assist in fully understanding your automobile."—*Engineering News.*

Just Published—A New Book on Automobile Electricity.

ODERN STARTING, LIGHTING AND IGNITION SYSTEMS. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

This practical volume has been written with special reference to the requirements of the non-technical reader desiring easily understood, explanatory matter, relating to all types of automobile ignition, starting and lighting systems. It can be understood by anyone, even without electrical knowledge, because elementary electrical principles are considered before any attempt is made to discuss features of the various systems. These basic principles are clearly stated and illustrated with simple diagrams. *All the leading systems of starting, lighting and ignition have been described and illustrated with the co-operation of the experts employed by the manufacturers.* Wiring diagrams are shown in both technical and non-technical forms. All symbols are fully explained. It is a comprehensive review of modern starting and ignition system practice, and includes a complete exposition of storage battery construction, care and repair. All types of starting motors, generators, magnetos, and all ignition or lighting system units are fully explained. The systems of cars already in use as well as those that are to come in 1916 are considered. *Every person in the automobile business needs this volume.* 5¼x7½. Cloth. 530 pages, 297 illustrations, 3 folding plates. Price . . **$1.50**

OTORCYCLES, SIDE CARS AND CYCLECARS, THEIR CONSTRUCTION, MANAGEMENT AND REPAIR. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

The only complete work published for the motorcyclist and cyclecarist. Describes fully all leading types of machines, their design, construction, maintenance, operation and repair. This treatise outlines fully the operation of two- and four-cycle power plants and all ignition, carburetion and lubrication systems in detail. Describes all representative types of free engine clutches, variable speed gears and power transmission systems. Gives complete instructions for operating and repairing all types. Considers fully electric self-starting and lighting systems, all types of spring frames and springs forks and shows leading control methods. For those desiring technical information a complete series of tables and many formulæ to assist in designing are included. The work tells how to figure power needed to climb grades, overcome air resistance and attain high speeds. It shows how to select gear ratios for various weights and powers, how to figure braking efficiency required, gives sizes of belts and chains to transmit power safely, and shows how to design sprockets, belt pulleys, etc. This work also includes complete formulæ for figuring horse-power, shows how dynamometer tests are made, defines relative efficiency of air- and water-cooled engines, plain and anti-friction bearings and many other data of a practical, helpful, engineering nature. Remember that you get this information in addition to the practical description and instructions which alone are worth several times the price of the book. 550 pages. 350 specially made illustrations, 5 folding plates. Cloth. Price . **$1.50**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"Here is a book that should be in the cycle repairer's kit."—*American Blacksmith.*
"The best way for any rider to thoroughly understand his machine, is to get a copy of this book; it is worth many times its price."—*Pacific Motorcyclist.*

AUTOMOBILE AND MOTORCYCLE CHARTS

HART. GASOLINE ENGINE TROUBLES MADE EASY—A CHART SHOWING SECTIONAL VIEW OF GASOLINE ENGINE. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

It shows clearly all parts of a typical four-cylinder gasoline engine of the four-cycle type. It outlines distinctly all parts liable to give trouble and also details the derangements apt to interfere with smooth engine operation.
Valuable to students, motorists, mechanics, repairmen, garagemen, automobile salesmen, chauffeurs, motorboat owners, motor-truck and tractor drivers, aviators, motorcyclists, and all others who have to do with gasoline power plants.
It simplifies location of all engine troubles, and while it will prove invaluable to the novice, it can be used to advantage by the more expert. It should be on the walls of every public and private garage, automobile repair shop, club house or school. It can be carried in the automobile or pocket with ease, and will insure against loss of time when engine trouble manifests itself.
This sectional view of engine is a complete review of all motor troubles. It is prepared by a practical motorist for all who motor. More information for the money than ever before offered. No details omitted. Size 25x38 inches. Securely mailed on receipt of . . . . . **25 cents**

CHART. LOCATION OF FORD ENGINE TROUBLES MADE EASY. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

This shows clear sectional views depicting all portions of the Ford power plant and auxiliary groups. It outlines clearly all parts of the engine, fuel supply system, ignition group and cooling system, that are apt to give trouble, detailing all derangements that are liable to make an engine lose power, start hard or work irregularly. This chart is valuable to students, owners, and drivers, as it simplifies location of all engine faults. Of great advantage as an instructor for the novice, it can be used equally well by the more expert as a work of reference and review. It can be carried in the tool-box or pocket with ease and will save its cost in labor eliminated the first time engine trouble manifests itself. Prepared with special reference to the average man's needs and is a practical review of all motor troubles because it is based on the actual experience of an automobile engineer-mechanic with the mechanism the chart describes. It enables the non-technical owner or operator of a Ford car to locate engine derangements by systematic search, guided by easily recognized symptoms instead of by guesswork. It makes the average owner independent of the roadside repair shop when touring. Must be seen to be appreciated. Size 25x38 inches. Printed on heavy bond paper. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

CHART. LUBRICATION OF THE MOTOR CAR CHASSIS. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

This chart presents the plan view of a typical six-cylinder chassis of standard design and all parts are clearly indicated that demand oil, also the frequency with which they must be lubricated and the kind of oil to use. A practical chart for all interested in motor-car maintenance. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

CHART. LOCATION OF CARBURETION TROUBLES MADE EASY. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

This chart shows all parts of a typical pressure feed fuel supply system and gives causes of trouble, how to locate defects and means of remedying them. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

CHART. LOCATION OF IGNITION SYSTEM TROUBLES MADE EASY. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

In this diagram all parts of a typical double ignition system using battery and magneto current are shown, and suggestions are given for readily finding ignition troubles and eliminating them when found. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

CHART. LOCATION OF COOLING AND LUBRICATION SYSTEM FAULTS. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

This composite diagram shows a typical automobile power plant using pump circulated water-cooling system and the most popular lubrication method. Gives suggestions for curing all overheating and loss of power faults due to faulty action of the oiling or cooling group. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

CHART. MOTORCYCLE TROUBLES MADE EASY. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

A chart showing sectional view of a single-cylinder gasoline engine. This chart simplifies location of all power-plant troubles. A single-cylinder motor is shown for simplicity. It outlines distinctly all parts liable to give trouble and also details the derangements apt to interfere with smooth engine operation. This chart will prove of value to all who have to do with the operation, repair or sale of motorcycles. No details omitted. Size 30x20 inches. Price . . . . . **.25 cents**

BRAZING AND SOLDERING

BRAZING AND SOLDERING. By JAMES F. HOBART.

The only book that shows you just how to handle any job of brazing or soldering that comes along; it tells you what mixture to use, how to make a furnace if you need one. *Full of* valuable kinks. The fifth edition of this book has just been published, and to *it much new* matter and a large number of tested formulæ for all kinds of solders and *fluxes have* been added. Illustrated. . . . . **25 cents**

CHARTS

GASOLINE ENGINE TROUBLES MADE EASY—A CHART SHOWING SECTIONAL VIEW OF GASOLINE ENGINE. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ.

It shows clearly all parts of a typical four-cylinder gasoline engine of the four-cycle type. It outlines distinctly all parts liable to give trouble and also details the derangements apt to interfere with smooth engine operation.

Valuable to students, motorists, mechanics, repairmen, garagemen, automobile salesmen, chauffeurs, motor-boat owners, motor-truck and tractor drivers, aviators, motorcyclists, and all others who have to do with gasoline power plants.

It simplifies location of all engine troubles, and while it will prove invaluable to the novice, it can be used to advantage by the more expert. It should be on the walls of every public and private garage, automobile repair shop, club house or school. It can be carried in the automobile or pocket with ease and will insure against loss of time when engine trouble manifests itself.

This sectional view of engine is a complete review of all motor troubles. It is prepared by a practical motorist for all who motor. No details omitted. Size 25x38 inches. . . . . **25 cents**

LUBRICATION OF THE MOTOR CAR CHASSIS.

This chart presents the plan view of a typical six-cylinder chassis of standard design and all parts are clearly indicated that demand oil, also the frequency with which they must be lubricated and the kind of oil to use. A practical chart for all interested in motor-car maintenance. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

LOCATION OF CARBURETION TROUBLES MADE EASY.

This chart shows all parts of a typical pressure feed fuel supply system and gives causes of trouble, how to locate defects and means of remedying them. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

LOCATION OF IGNITION SYSTEM TROUBLES MADE EASY.

In this chart all parts of a typical double ignition system using battery and magneto current are shown and suggestions are given for readily finding ignition troubles and eliminating them when found. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

LOCATION OF COOLING AND LUBRICATION SYSTEM FAULTS.

This composite chart shows a typical automobile power plant using pump circulated water-cooling system and the most popular lubrication method. Gives suggestions for curing all overheating and loss of power faults due to faulty action of the oiling or cooling group. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

MOTORCYCLE TROUBLES MADE EASY—A CHART SHOWING SECTIONAL VIEW OF SINGLE-CYLINDER GASOLINE ENGINE. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ.

This chart simplifies location of all power-plant troubles, and will prove invaluable to all who have to do with the operation, repair or sale of motorcycles. No details omitted. Size 25x38 inches. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

LOCATION OF FORD ENGINE TROUBLES MADE EASY. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

This shows clear sectional views depicting all portions of the Ford power plant and auxiliary groups. It outlines clearly all parts of the engine, fuel supply system, ignition group and cooling system, that are apt to give trouble, detailing all derangements that are liable to make an engine lose power, start hard or work irregularly. This chart is valuable to students, owners, and drivers, as it simplifies location of all engine faults. Of great advantage as an instructor for the novice, it can be used equally well by the more expert as a work of reference and review. It can be carried in the tool-box or pocket with ease and will save its cost in labor eliminated the first time engine trouble manifests itself. Prepared with special reference to the average man's needs and is a practical review of all motor troubles because it is based on the actual experience of an automobile engineer-mechanic with the mechanism the chart describes. It enables the non-technical owner or operator of a Ford car to locate engine derangements by systematic search, guided by easily recognized symptoms instead of by guesswork. It makes the average owner independent of the roadside repair shop when touring. Must be seen to be appreciated. Size 25x38 inches. Printed on heavy *bond paper. Price,* . . . . . **25 cents**

MODERN SUBMARINE CHART — WITH 200 PARTS NUMBERED AND NAMED.

A cross-section view, showing clearly and distinctly all the interior of a Submarine of the latest type. You get more information from this chart, about the construction and operation of a Submarine, than in any other way. No details omitted—everything is accurate and to scale. It is absolutely correct in every detail, having been approved by Naval Engineers. All the machinery and devices fitted in a modern Submarine Boat are shown, and to make the engraving more readily understood, all the features are shown in operative form, with Officers and Men in the act of performing the duties assigned to them in service conditions. This CHART IS REALLY AN ENCYCLOPEDIA OF A SUBMARINE. . . . . **25 cents**

BOX CAR CHART.

A chart showing the anatomy of a box car, having every part of the car numbered and its proper name given in a reference list. . . . . **25 cents**

GONDOLA CAR CHART.

A chart showing the anatomy of a gondola car, having every part of the car numbered and its proper reference name given in a reference list. . . . . **25 cents**

PASSENGER-CAR CHART.

A chart showing the anatomy of a passenger-car, having every part of the car numbered and its proper name given in a reference list. . . . . **25 cents**

STEEL HOPPER BOTTOM COAL CAR.

A chart showing the anatomy of a steel Hopper Bottom Coal Car, having every part of the car numbered and its proper name given in a reference list. . . . . **25 cents**

TRACTIVE POWER CHART.

A chart whereby you can find the tractive power or drawbar pull of any locomotive without making a figure. Shows what cylinders are equal, how driving wheels and steam pressure affect the power. What sized engine you need to exert a given drawbar pull or anything you desire in this line. . . . . **50 cents**

HORSE-POWER CHART

Shows the horse-power of any stationary engine without calculation. No matter what the cylinder diameter of stroke, the steam pressure of cut-off, the revolutions, or whether condensing or non-condensing, it's all there. Easy to use, accurate, and saves time and calculations. Especially useful to engineers and designers. **50 cents**

BOILER ROOM CHART. By GEO. L. FOWLER.

A chart—size 14x28 inches—showing in isometric perspective the mechanisms belonging in a modern boiler room. The various parts are shown broken or removed, so that the internal construction is fully illustrated. Each part is given a reference number, and these, with the corresponding name, are given in a glossary printed at the sides. This chart is really a dictionary of the boiler room—the names of more than 200 parts being given. . . . . **25 cents**

COMPRESSED AIR

COMPRESSED AIR IN ALL ITS APPLICATIONS. By GARDNER D. HISCOX.

This is the most complete book on the subject of Air that has ever been issued, and its thirty-five chapters include about every phase of the subject one can think of. It may be called an encyclopedia of compressed air. It is written by an expert, who, in its 665 pages, has dealt with the subject in a comprehensive manner, no phase of it being omitted. Includes the physical properties of air from a vacuum to its highest pressure, its thermodynamics, compression, transmission and uses as a motive power, in the Operation of Stationary and Portable Machinery, in Mining, Air Tools, Air Lifts, Pumping of Water, Acids, and Oils; the Air Blast for Cleaning and Painting, the Sand Blast and its Work, and the Numerous Appliances in which Compressed Air is a Most Convenient and Economical Transmitter of Power for Mechanical Work, Railway Propulsion, Refrigeration, and the Various Uses to which Compressed Air has been applied. Includes forty-four tables of the physical properties of air, its *compression*, expansion, and volumes required for various kinds of work, and a list *of patents on* compressed air from 1875 to date. Over 500 illustrations, 5th Edition, *revised and enlarged.* Cloth bound, **$5.00.** Half Morocco, price **$6.50**

CONCRETE

JUST PUBLISHED—CONCRETE WORKERS' REFERENCE BOOKS. A SERIES OF POPULAR HANDBOOKS FOR CONCRETE USERS. Prepared by A. A. HOUGHTON. . . . . Each **50 cents**

The author, in preparing this Series, has not only treated on the usual types of construction, but explains and illustrates molds and systems that are not patented, but which are equal in value and often superior to those restricted by patents. These molds are very easily and cheaply constructed and embody simplicity, rapidity of operation, and the most successful results in the molded concrete. Each of these Twelve books is fully illustrated, and the subjects are exhaustively treated in plain English.

CONCRETE WALL FORMS. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

A new automatic wall clamp is illustrated with working drawings. Other types of wall forms, clamps, separators, etc., are also illustrated and explained. (No. 1 of Series) . . . . . **50 cents**

CONCRETE FLOORS AND SIDEWALKS. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The molds for molding squares, hexagonal and many other styles of mosaic floor and sidewalk blocks are fully illustrated and explained. (No. 2 of Series) . . **50 cents**

PRACTICAL CONCRETE SILO CONSTRUCTION. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

Complete working drawings and specifications are given for several styles of concrete silos, with illustrations of molds for monolithic and block silos. The tables, data, and information presented in this book are of the utmost value in planning and constructing all forms of concrete silos. (No. 3 of Series) . . . . . **50 cents**

MOLDING CONCRETE CHIMNEYS, SLATE AND ROOF TILES. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The manufacture of all types of concrete slate and roof tile is fully treated. Valuable data on all forms of reinforced concrete roofs are contained within its pages. The construction of concrete chimneys by block and monolithic systems is fully illustrated and described. A number of ornamental designs of chimney construction with molds are shown in this valuable treatise. (No. 4 of Series.) . . . . . **50 cents**

MOLDING AND CURING ORNAMENTAL CONCRETE. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The proper proportions of cement and aggregates for various finishes, also the method of thoroughly mixing and placing in the molds, are fully treated. An exhaustive treatise on this subject that every concrete worker will find of daily use and value. (No. 5 of Series.) . . . . . **50 cents**

CONCRETE MONUMENTS, MAUSOLEUMS AND BURIAL VAULTS. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The molding of concrete monuments to imitate the most expensive cut stone is explained in this treatise, with working drawings of easily built molds. Cutting inscriptions and designs are also fully treated. (No. 6 of Series.) . . . **50 cents**

MOLDING CONCRETE BATHTUBS, AQUARIUMS AND NATATORIUMS. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

Simple molds and instruction are given for molding many styles of concrete bathtubs, swimming-pools, etc. These molds are easily built and permit rapid and successful work. (No. 7 of Series.) . . . . . **50 cents**

CONCRETE BRIDGES, CULVERTS AND SEWERS. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

A number of ornamental concrete bridges with illustrations of molds are given. A collapsible center or core for bridges, culverts and sewers is fully illustrated with detailed instructions for building. (No. 8 of Series.) . . . . . **50 cents**

CONSTRUCTING CONCRETE PORCHES. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

A number of designs with working drawings of molds are fully explained so any one can easily construct different styles of ornamental concrete porches without the purchase of expensive molds. (No. 9 of Series.) . . . . . **50 cents**

MOLDING CONCRETE FLOWER-POTS, BOXES, JARDINIERES, ETC. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The molds for producing many original designs of flower-pots, urns, flower-boxes, jardinieres, etc., are fully illustrated and explained, so the worker can easily construct and operate same. (No. 10 of Series.) . . . . . **50 cents**

MOLDING CONCRETE FOUNTAINS AND LAWN ORNAMENTS. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The molding of a number of designs of lawn seats, curbing, hitching posts, pergolas, sun dials and other forms of ornamental concrete for the ornamentation of lawns and gardens, is fully illustrated and described. (No. 11 of Series) . . . . . **50 cents**

CONCRETE FROM SAND MOLDS. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

A Practical Work treating on a process which has heretofore been held as a trade secret by the few who possessed it, and which will successfully mold every and any class of ornamental concrete work. The process of molding concrete with sand molds is of the utmost practical value, possessing the manifold advantages of a low cost of molds, the ease and rapidity of operation, perfect details to all ornamental designs, density and increased strength of the concrete, perfect curing of the work without attention and the easy removal of the molds regardless of any undercutting the design may have. 192 pages. Fully illustrated. Price **$2.00**

ORNAMENTAL CONCRETE WITHOUT MOLDS. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The process for making ornamental concrete without molds has long been held as a secret, and now, for the first time, this process is given to the public. The book reveals the secret and is the only book published which explains a simple, practical method whereby the concrete worker is enabled, by employing wood and metal templates of different designs, to mold or model in concrete any Cornice, Archivolt, Column, Pedestal, Base Cap, Urn or Pier in a monolithic form—right upon the job. These may be molded in units or blocks, and then built up to suit the specifications demanded. This work is fully illustrated, with detailed engravings. Price . **$2.00**

CONCRETE FOR THE FARM AND IN THE SHOP. By H. COLIN CAMPBELL, C.E., E.M.

"Concrete for the Farm and in the Shop" is a new book from cover to cover, illustrating and describing in plain, simple language many of the numerous applications of concrete within the range of the home worker. Among the subjects treated are:

Principles of reinforcing; methods of protecting concrete so as to insure proper hardening; home-made mixers; mixing by hand and machine; form construction, described and illustrated by drawings and photographs; construction of concrete walls and fences; concrete fence posts; concrete gate posts; corner posts; clothes line posts; grape arbor posts; tanks; troughs; cisterns; hog wallows; feeding floors and barnyard pavements; foundations; well curbs and platforms; indoor floors; sidewalks; steps; concrete hotbeds and cold frames; concrete slab roofs; walls for buildings; repairing leaks in tanks and cisterns; and all topics associated with these subjects as bearing upon securing the best results from concrete are dwelt upon at sufficient length in plain every-day English so that the inexperienced person desiring to undertake a piece of concrete construction can, by following the directions set forth in this book, secure 100 per cent success every time. A number of convenient and practical tables for estimating quantities, and some practical examples, are also given. (5 x 7.) 149 pages, 51 illustrations. Price **$0.75**

POPULAR HANDBOOK FOR CEMENT AND CONCRETE USERS. By MYRON H. LEWIS.

This is a concise treatise of the principles and methods employed in the manufacture and use of cement in all classes of modern works. The author has brought together in this work all the salient matter of interest to the user of concrete and its many diversified products. The matter is presented in logical and systematic order, clearly written, fully illustrated and free from involved mathematics. Everything of value to the concrete user is given, including kinds of cement employed in construction, concrete architecture, inspection and testing, waterproofing, coloring and painting, rules, tables, working and cost data. The book comprises thirty-three chapters, as follows: Introductory. Kinds of Cements and How They are Made. Properties. Testing *and Requirements* of Hydraulic Cement. Concrete and its Properties. Sand, Broken *Stone and* Gravel for Concrete. How to Proportion the Materials. How to Mix

and Place Concrete. Forms of Concrete Construction. The Architectural and Artistic Possibilities of Concrete. Concrete Residences. Mortars, Plasters and Stucco, and How to Use them. The Artistic Treatment of Concrete Surfaces. Concrete Building Blocks. The Making of Ornamental Concrete. Concrete Pipes, Fences, Posts, etc. Essential Features and Advantages of Reenforced Concrete. How to Design Reenforced Concrete Beams, Slabs and Columns. Explanations of the Methods and Principles in Designing Reenforced Concrete Beams and Slabs. Systems of Reenforcement Employed. Reenforced Concrete in Factory and General Building Construction. Concrete in Foundation Work. Concrete Retaining Walls, Abutments and Bulkheads. Concrete Arches and Arch Bridges. Concrete Beam and Girder Bridges. Concrete in Sewerage and Drainage Works. Concrete Tanks, Dams and Reservoirs. Concrete Sidewalks, Curbs and Pavements. Concrete in Railroad Constructions. The Utility of Concrete on the Farm. The Waterproofing of Concrete Structure. Grout of Liquid Concrete and Its Use. Inspection of Concrete Work. Cost of Concrete Work. Some of the special features of the book are: 1. The Attention Paid to the Artistic and Architectural Side of Concrete Work. 2. The Authoritative Treatment of the Problem of Waterproofing Concrete. 3. An Excellent Summary of the Rules to be Followed in Concrete Construction. 4. The Valuable Cost Data and Useful Tables given. A valuable Addition to the Library of Every Cement and Concrete User. Price **$2.50**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"The field of Concrete Construction is well covered and the matter contained is well within the understanding of any person."—*Engineering-Contracting.*
"Should be on the bookshelves of every contractor, engineer, and architect in the land."—*National Builder.*

VATERPROOFING CONCRETE. By MYRON H. LEWIS.

Modern Methods of Waterproofing Concrete and Other Structures. A condensed statement of the Principles, Rules, and Precautions to be Observed in Waterproofing and Dampproofing Structures and Structural Materials. Paper binding. Illustrated. Price . . . . . **50 cents**

DICTIONARIES

TANDARD ELECTRICAL DICTIONARY. By T. O'CONOR SLOANE.

An indispensable work to all interested in electrical science. Suitable alike for the student and professional. A practical handbook of reference containing definitions of about 5000 distinct words, terms and phrases. The definitions are terse and concise and include every term used in electrical science. Recently issued. An entirely new edition. Should be in the possession of all who desire to keep abreast with the progress of this branch of science. Complete, concise and convenient. 682 pages. 393 illustrations. Price **$3.00**

DIES—METAL WORK

IES: THEIR CONSTRUCTION AND USE FOR THE MODERN WORKING OF SHEET METALS. By J. V. WOODWORTH.

A most useful book, and one which should be in the hands of all engaged in the press working of metals; treating on the Designing, Constructing, and Use of Tools, Fixtures and Devices, together with the manner in which they should be used in the Power Press, for the cheap and rapid production of the great variety of sheet-metal articles now in use. It is designed as a guide to the production of sheet-metal parts at the minimum of cost with the maximum of output. The hardening and tempering of Press tools and the classes of work which may be produced to the best advantage by the use of dies in the power press are fully treated. Its 505 illustrations show dies, press fixtures and sheet-metal working devices, the descriptions of which are so clear and practical that all metal-working mechanics will be able to understand how to design, construct and use them. Many of the dies and press fixtures treated were either constructed by the author or under his supervision. Others were built by skilful mechanics and are in use in large sheet-metal establishments and machine shops. 5th Edition. Price $3.00

PUNCHES, DIES AND TOOLS FOR MANUFACTURING IN PRESSES. By J. V. WOODWORTH.

This work is a companion volume to the author's elementary work entitled "Dies, Their Construction and Use." It does not go into the details of die-making to the extent of the author's previous book, but gives a comprehensive review of the field of operations carried on by presses. A large part of the information given has been drawn from the author's personal experience. It might well be termed an Encyclopedia of Die-Making, Punch-Making, Die-Sinking, Sheet-Metal Working, and Making of Special Tools, Subpresses, Devices and Mechanical Combinations for Punching, Cutting, Bending, Forming, Piercing, Drawing, Compressing and Assembling Sheet-Metal Parts, and also Articles of other Materials in Machine Tools. 2d Edition. Price **$4.00**

DROP FORGING, DIE-SINKING AND MACHINE-FORMING OF STEEL. By J. V. WOODWORTH.

This is a practical treatise on Modern Shop Practice, Processes, Methods, Machine Tools, and Details treating on the Hot and Cold Machine-Forming of Steel and Iron into Finished Shapes; together with Tools, Dies, and Machinery involved in the manufacture of Duplicate Forgings and Interchangeable Hot and Cold Pressed Parts from Bar and Sheet Metal. This book fills a demand of long standing for information regarding drop-forgings, die-sinking and machine-forming of steel and the shop practice involved, as it actually exists in the modern drop-forging shop. The processes of die-sinking and force-making, which are thoroughly described and illustrated in this admirable work, are rarely to be found explained in such a clear and concise manner as is here set forth. The process of die-sinking relates to the engraving or sinking of the female or lower dies, such as are used for drop-forgings, hot and cold machine forging, swedging and the press working of metals. The process of force-making relates to the engraving or raising of the male or upper dies used in producing the lower dies for the press-forming and machine-forging of duplicate parts of metal. In addition to the arts above mentioned the book contains explicit information regarding the drop-forging and hardening plants, designs, conditions, equipment, drop hammers, forging machines, etc., machine forging, hydraulic forging, autogenous welding and shop practice. The book contains eleven chapters, and the information contained in these chapters is just what will prove most valuable to the forged-metal worker. All operations described in the work are thoroughly illustrated by means of perspective half-tones and outline sketches of the machinery employed. 300 detailed illustrations. Price. **$2.50**

DRAWING—SKETCHING PAPER

PRACTICAL PERSPECTIVE. By RICHARDS and COLVIN.

Shows just how to make all kinds of mechanical drawings in the only practical perspective isometric. Makes everything plain so that any mechanic can understand a sketch or drawing in this way. Saves time in the drawing room, and mistakes in the shops. Contains practical examples of various classes of work. 4th Edition. **50 cents**

LINEAR PERSPECTIVE SELF-TAUGHT. By HERMAN T. C. KRAUS.

This work gives the theory and practice of linear perspective, as used in architectural, engineering and mechanical drawings. Persons taking up the study of the subject by themselves will be able, by the use of the instruction given, to readily grasp the subject, and by reasonable practice become good perspective draftsmen. The arrangement of the book is good; the plate is on the left-hand, while the descriptive text follows on the opposite page, so as to be readily referred to. The drawings are on sufficiently large scale to show the work clearly and are plainly figured. There is included a self-explanatory chart which gives all information necessary for the thorough understanding of perspective. This chart alone is worth many times over the price of the book. 2d Revised and enlarged Edition. **$2.50**

SELF-TAUGHT MECHANICAL DRAWING AND ELEMENTARY MACHINE DESIGN. By F. L. SYLVESTER, M.E., Draftsman, with additions by ERIK OBERG, associate editor of "Machinery."

This is a practical treatise on Mechanical Drawing and Machine Design, comprising the first principles of geometric and mechanical drawing, workshop mathematics, *mechanics, strength of* materials and the calculations and design of machine details.

The author's aim has been to adapt this treatise to the requirements of the practical mechanic and young draftsman and to present the matter in as clear and concise a manner as possible. To meet the demands of this class of students, practically all the important elements of machine design have been dealt with, and in addition algebraic formulas have been explained, and the elements of trigonometry treated in the manner best suited to the needs of the practical man. The book is divided into 20 chapters, and in arranging the material, mechanical drawing, pure and simple, has been taken up first, as a thorough understanding of the principles of representing objects facilitates the further study of mechanical subjects. This is followed by the mathematics necessary for the solution of the problems in machine design which are presented later, and a practical introduction to theoretical mechanics and the strength of materials. The various elements entering into machine design, such as cams, gears, sprocket-wheels, cone pulleys, bolts, screws, couplings, clutches, shafting and fly-wheels, have been treated in such a way as to make possible the use of the work as a text-book for a continuous course of study. It is easily comprehended and assimilated even by students of limited previous training. 330 pages, 215 engravings. Price . . **$2.00**

NEW SKETCHING PAPER.

A new specially ruled paper to enable you to make sketches or drawings in isometric perspective without any figuring or fussing. It is being used for shop details as well as for assembly drawings, as it makes one sketch do the work of three, and no workman can help seeing just what is wanted. Pads of 40 sheets, 6x9 inches, **25 cents.** Pads of 40 sheets, 9x12 inches, **50 cents**; 40 sheets, 12x18, Price **$1.00**

ELECTRICITY

RITHMETIC OF ELECTRICITY. By Prof. T. O'Conor Sloane.

A practical treatise on electrical calculations of all kinds reduced to a series of rules, all of the simplest forms, and involving only ordinary arithmetic; each rule illustrated by one or more practical problems, with detailed solution of each one. This book is classed among the most useful works published on the science of electricity, covering as it does the mathematics of electricity in a manner that will attract the attention of those who are not familiar with algebraical formulas. 20th Edition. 160 pages. Price **$1.00**

OMMUTATOR CONSTRUCTION. By Wm. Baxter, Jr.

The business end of any dynamo or motor of the direct current type is the commutator. This book goes into the designing, building, and maintenance of commutators, shows how to locate troubles and how to remedy them; everyone who fusses with dynamos needs this. 4th Edition . . . . . **25 cents**

YNAMO BUILDING FOR AMATEURS, OR HOW TO CONSTRUCT A FIFTY-WATT DYNAMO. By Arthur J. Weed, Member of N. Y. Electrical Society.

A practical treatise showing in detail the construction of a small dynamo or motor, the entire machine work of which can be done on a small foot lathe. Dimensioned working drawings are given for each piece of machine work, and each operation is clearly described. This machine, when used as a dynamo, has an output of fifty watts; when used as a motor it will drive a small drill press or lathe. It can be used to drive a sewing machine on any and all ordinary work. The book is illustrated with more than sixty original engravings showing the actual construction of the different parts. Among the contents are chapters on: 1. Fifty-Watt Dynamo. 2. Side Bearing Rods. 3. Field Punching. 4. Bearings. 5. Commutator. 6. Pulley. 7. Brush Holders. 8. Connection Board. 9. Armature Shaft. 10. Armature. 11. Armature Winding. 12. Field Winding. 13. Connecting and Starting. Price, paper, 50 cents. Cloth **$1.00**

LECTRIC WIRING, DIAGRAMS AND SWITCHBOARDS. By Newton Harrison.

A thoroughly practical treatise covering the subject of Electric Wiring in all its branches, including explanations and diagrams which are thoroughly explicit and greatly simplify the subject. Practical, every-day problems in wiring are presented and the method of obtaining intelligent results clearly shown. Only arithmetic is used. Ohm's law

is given a simple explanation with reference to wiring for direct and alternating currents. The fundamental principle of drop of potential in circuits is shown with its various applications. The simple circuit is developed with the position of mains, feeders and branches; their treatment as a part of a wiring plan and their employment in house wiring clearly illustrated. Some simple facts about testing are included in connection with the wiring. Molding and conduit work are given careful consideration; and switchboards are systematically treated, built up and illustrated, showing the purpose they serve, for connection with the circuits, and to shunt and compound wound machines. The simple principles of switchboard construction, the development of the switchboard, the connections of the various instruments, including the lightning arrester, are also plainly set forth.

Alternating current wiring is treated, with explanations of the power factor, conditions calling for various sizes of wire, and a simple way of obtaining the sizes for single-phase, two-phase and three-phase circuits. This is the only complete work issued showing and telling you what you should know about direct and alternating current wiring. It is a ready reference. The work is free from advanced technicalities and mathematics, arithmetic being used throughout. It is in every respect a handy, well-written, instructive, comprehensive volume on wiring for the wireman, foreman, contractor, or electrician. 272 pages; 105 illustrations. Price $1.50

ELECTRIC TOY MAKING, DYNAMO BUILDING, AND ELECTRIC MOTOR CONSTRUCTION. By Prof. T. O'Conor Sloane.

This work treats of the making at home of electrical toys, electrical apparatus, motors, dynamos and instruments in general, and is designed to bring within the reach of young and old the manufacture of genuine and useful electrical appliances. The work is especially designed for amateurs and young folks.

Thousands of our young people are daily experimenting, and busily engaged in making electrical toys and apparatus of various kinds. The present work is just what is wanted to give the much needed information in a plain, practical manner, with illustrations to make easy the carrying out of the work. 20th Edition. Price $1.00

PRACTICAL ELECTRICITY. By Prof. T. O'Conor Sloane.

This work of 768 pages was previously known as Sloane's Electricians' Hand Book, and is intended for the practical electrician who has to make things go. The entire field of electricity is covered within its pages. Among some of the subjects treated are: The Theory of the Electric Current and Circuit, Electro-Chemistry, Primary Batteries, Storage Batteries, Generation and Utilization of Electric Powers, Alternating Current, Armature Winding, Dynamos and Motors, Motor Generators, Operation of the Central Station Switchboards, Safety Appliances, Distribution of Electric Light and Power, Street Mains, Transformers, Arc and Incandescent Lighting, Electric Measurements, Photometry, Electric Railways, Telephony, Bell-Wiring, Electric-Plating, Electric Heating, Wireless Telegraphy, etc. It contains no useless theory; everything is to the point. It teaches you just what you want to know about electricity. It is the standard work published on the subject. Forty-one chapters, 556 engravings. Price $2.50

ELECTRICITY SIMPLIFIED. By Prof. T. O'Conor Sloane.

The object of "Electricity Simplified" is to make the subject as plain as possible and to show what the modern conception of electricity is; to show how two plates of different metal, immersed in acid, can send a message around the globe; to explain how a bundle of copper wire rotated by a steam engine can be the agent in lighting our streets, to tell what the volt, ohm and ampere are, and what high and low tension mean; and to answer the questions that perpetually arise in the mind in this age of electricity. 13th Edition. 172 pages. Illustrated. Price $1.00

HOUSE WIRING. By Thomas W. Poppe.

This work describes and illustrates the actual installation of Electric Light Wiring, the manner in which the work should be done, and the method of doing it. The book can be conveniently carried in the pocket. It is intended for the Electrician, Helper and Apprentice. It solves all Wiring Problems and contains nothing that conflicts with the rulings of the National Board of Fire Underwriters. It gives just the information essential to the Successful Wiring of a Building. Among the subjects treated are: Locating the Meter. Panel Boards. Switches. Plug Receptacles. Brackets. Ceiling Fixtures. The Meter Connections. The Feed Wires. The Steel Armored Cable System. The Flexible Steel Conduit System. The Ridig Conduit System. A digest of the National Board of Fire Underwriters' rules relating to metallic wiring systems. Various switching arrangements explained and diagrammed. The easiest method of

testing the Three- and Four-way circuits explained. The grounding of all metallic wiring systems and the reason for doing so shown and explained. The insulation of the metal parts of lamp fixtures and the reason for the same described and illustrated. 125 pages. 2nd Edition, revised and enlarged. Fully illustrated. Flexible cloth. Price . . . . . **50 cents**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"The information given is exact and exhaustive without being too technical or overladen with details."—*Druggists' Circular.*

OW TO BECOME A SUCCESSFUL ELECTRICIAN. By Prof. T. O'CONOR SLOANE.

Every young man who wishes to become a successful electrician should read this book. It tells in simple language the surest and easiest way to become a successful electrician. The studies to be followed, methods of work, field of operation and the requirements of the successful electrician are pointed out and fully explained. Every young engineer will find this an excellent stepping stone to more advanced works on electricity which he must master before success can be attained. Many young men become discouraged at the very outstart by attempting to read and study books that are far beyond their comprehension. This book serves as the connecting link between the rudiments taught in the public schools and the real study of electricity. It is interesting from cover to cover. Eighteenth Revised Edition, just issued. 205 pages. Illustrated. Price **$1.00**

TANDARD ELECTRICAL DICTIONARY. By T. O'CONOR SLOANE.

An indispensable work to all interested in electrical science. Suitable alike for the student and professional. A practical handbook of reference containing definitions of about 5,000 distinct words, terms and phrases. The definitions are terse and concise and include every term used in electrical science. Recently issued. An entirely new edition. Should be in the possession of all who desire to keep abreast with the progress of this branch of science. In its arrangement and typography the book is very convenient. The word or term defined is printed in black-faced type which readily catches the eye, while the body of the page is in smaller but distinct type. The definitions are well worded, and so as to be understood by the non-technical reader. The general plan seems to be to give an exact, concise definition, and then amplify and explain in a more popular way. Synonyms are also given, and references to other words and phrases are made. A very complete and accurate index of fifty pages is at the end of the volume; and as this index contains all synonyms, and as all phrases are indexed in every reasonable combination of words, reference to the proper place in the body of the book is readily made. It is difficult to decide how far a book of this character is to keep the dictionary form, and to what extent it may assume the encyclopedia form. For some purposes, concise, exactly worded definitions are needed; for other purposes, more extended descriptions are required. This book seeks to satisfy both demands, and does it with considerable success. Complete, concise and convenient. 682 pages. 393 illustrations. Twelfth Edition. Price **$3.00**

WITCHBOARDS. By WILLIAM BAXTER, JR.

This book appeals to every engineer and electrician who wants to know the practical side of things. It takes up all sorts and conditions of dynamos, connections and circuits, and shows by diagram and illustration just how the switchboard should be connected. Includes direct and alternating current boards, also those for arc lighting, incandescent and power circuits. Special treatment on high voltage boards for power transmission. 2d Edition. 190 pages. Illustrated. Price **$1.50**

ELEPHONE CONSTRUCTION, INSTALLATION, WIRING, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE. By W. H. RADCLIFFE and H. C. CUSHING.

This book is intended for the amateur, the wireman, or the engineer who desires to establish a means of telephonic communication between the rooms of his home, office, or shop. It deals only with such things as may be of use to him rather than with theories.

Gives the principles of construction and operation of both the Bell and Independent instruments; approved methods of installing and wiring them; the means of protecting them from lightning and abnormal currents; their connection together for operation as series or bridging stations; and rules for their inspection and maintenance. Line wiring and the wiring and operation of special telephone systems are also treated.

Intricate mathematics are avoided, and all apparatus, circuits and systems are thoroughly described. The appendix contains definitions of units and terms used in the

text. Selected wiring tables, which are very helpful, are also included. Among the subjects treated are Construction, Operation, and Installation of Telephone Instruments; Inspection and Maintenance of Telephone Instruments; Telephone Line Wiring; Testing Telephone Line Wires and Cables; Wiring and Operation of Special Telephone Systems, etc. 2nd Edition, revised and enlarged. 223 pages. 154 illustrations $1.00

WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY AND TELEPHONY SIMPLY EXPLAINED. By ALFRED P. MORGAN.

This is undoubtedly one of the most complete and comprehensible treatises on the subject ever published, and a close study of its pages will enable one to master all the details of the wireless transmission of messages. The author has filled a long-felt want and has succeeded in furnishing a lucid, comprehensible explanation in simple language of the theory and practice of wireless telegraphy and telephony.

Among the contents are: Introductory; Wireless Transmission and Reception—The Aerial System, Earth Connections—The Transmitting Apparatus, Spark Coils and Transformers, Condensers, Helixes, Spark Gaps, Anchor Gaps, Aerial Switches—The Receiving Apparatus, Detectors, etc.—Tuning and Coupling, Tuning Coils, Loose Couplers, Variable Condensers, Directive Wave Systems—Miscellaneous Apparatus, Telephone Receivers, Range of Stations, Static Interference—Wireless Telephones, Sound and Sound Waves, The Vocal Cords and Ear—Wireless Telephone, How Sounds Are Changed into Electric Waves—Wireless Telephones, The Apparatus—Summary. 154 pages. 156 engravings. Price $1.00

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"This book should be in both the home and school library."—*The Youths' Instructor.*

WIRING A HOUSE. By HERBERT PRATT.

Shows a house already built; tells just how to start about wiring it; where to begin; what wire to use; how to run it according to Insurance Rules; in fact, just the information you need. Directions apply equally to a shop. Fourth edition . . 25 cents

FACTORY MANAGEMENT, ETC.

MODERN MACHINE SHOP CONSTRUCTION, EQUIPMENT AND MANAGEMENT. By O. E. PERRIGO, M.E.

The only work published that describes the modern machine shop or manufacturing plant from the time the grass is growing on the site intended for it until the finished product is shipped. By a careful study of its thirty-two chapters the practical man may economically build, efficiently equip, and successfully manage the modern machine shop or manufacturing establishment. Just the book needed by those contemplating the erection of modern shop buildings, the rebuilding and reorganization of old ones, or the introduction of modern shop methods, time amd cost systems. It is a book written and illustrated by a practical shop man for practical shop men who are too busy to read *theories* and want *facts*. It is the most complete all-around book of its kind ever published. It is a practical book for practical men, from the apprentice in the shop to the president in the office. It minutely describes and illustrates the most simple and yet the most efficient time and cost system yet devised. Price . $5.00

FUEL

COMBUSTION OF COAL AND THE PREVENTION OF SMOKE. By WM. M. BARR.

This book has been prepared with special reference to the generation of heat by the combustion of the common fuels found in the United States, and deals particularly with the conditions necessary to the economic and smokeless combustion of bituminous coals in Stationary and Locomotive Steam Boilers.

The presentation of this important subject is systematic and progressive. The arrangement of the book is in a series of practical questions to which are appended accurate answers, which describe in language, free from technicalities, the several processes involved in the furnace combustion of American fuels; it clearly states the essential requisites for perfect combustion, and points out the best methods for furnace construction for obtaining the greatest quantity of heat from any given quality of coal. *Nearly 350* pages, fully illustrated. Price $1.00

GAS ENGINES AND GAS

THE GASOLINE ENGINE ON THE FARM: ITS OPERATION, REPAIR AND USES. By XENO W. PUTNAM.

This is a practical treatise on the Gasoline and Kerosene Engine intended for the man who wants to know just how to manage his engine and how to apply it to all kinds of farm work to the best advantage.

This book abounds with hints and helps for the farm and suggestions for the home and housewife. There is so much of value in this book that it is impossible to adequately describe it in such small space. Suffice to say that it is the kind of a book every farmer will appreciate and every farm home ought to have. Includes selecting the most suitable engine for farm work, its most convenient and efficient installation, with chapters on troubles, their remedies, and how to avoid them. The care and management of the farm tractor in plowing, harrowing, harvesting and road grading are fully covered; also plain directions are given for handling the tractor on the road. Special attention is given to relieving farm life of its drudgery by applying power to the disagreeable small tasks which must otherwise be done by hand. Many home-made contrivances for cutting wood, supplying kitchen, garden, and barn with water, loading, hauling and unloading hay, delivering grain to the bins or the feed trough are included; also full directions for making the engine milk the cows, churn, wash, sweep the house and clean the windows, etc. Very fully illustrated with drawings of working parts and cuts showing Stationary, Portable and Tractor Engines doing all kinds of farm work. All money-making farms utilize power. Learn how to utilize power by reading the pages of this book. It is an aid to the result getter, invaluable to the up-to-date farmer, student, blacksmith, implement dealer and, in fact, all who can apply practical knowledge of stationary gasoline engines or gas tractors to advantage. 530 pages. Nearly 180 engravings. Price **$2.00**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"Am much pleased with the book and find it to be very complete and up-to-date. I will heartily recommend it to students and farmers whom I think would stand in need of such a work, as I think it is an exceptionally good one."—*N. S. Gardiner*, Prof. in Charge, Clemson Agr. College of S. C.; Dept. of Agri. and Agri. Exp. Station, Clemson College, S. C.

"I feel that Mr. Putnam's book covers the main points which a farmer should know."—*R. T. Burdick*, Instructor in Agronomy, University of Vermont, Burlington, Vt.

"It will be a valuable addition to our library upon Farm Machinery."—*James A. Farra*, Inst. in Agri. Engineering, State University of Ky., Lexington, Ky.

GASOLINE ENGINES: THEIR OPERATION, USE AND CARE. By A. HYATT VERRILL.

The simplest, latest and most comprehensive popular work published on Gasoline Engines, describing what the Gasoline Engine is; its construction and operation; how to install it; how to select it; how to use it and how to remedy troubles encountered. Intended for Owners, Operators and Users of Gasoline Motors of all kinds. This work fully describes and illustrates the various types of Gasoline Engines used in Motor Boats, Motor Vehicles and Stationary Work. The parts, accessories and appliances are described, with chapters on ignition, fuel, lubrication, operation and engine troubles. Special attention is given to the care, operation and repair of motors, with useful hints and suggestions on emergency repairs and makeshifts. A complete glossary of technical terms and an alphabetically arranged table of troubles and their symptoms form most valuable and unique features of this manual. Nearly every illustration in the book is original, having been made by the author. Every page is full of interest and value. A book which you cannot afford to be without. 275 pages. 152 specially made engravings. Price **$1.50**

GAS, GASOLINE, AND OIL ENGINES. By GARDNER D. HISCOX.

Just issued, 21st revised and enlarged edition. Every user of a gas engine needs this book. Simple, instructive, and right up-to-date. The only complete work on the subject. Tells all about the running and management of gas, gasoline and oil engines, as designed and manufactured in the United States. Explosive motors for stationary marine and vehicle power are fuly treated, together with illustrations of their parts and tabulated sizes, also their care and running are included. Electric ignition by induction coil and jump spark are fully explained and illustrated, including valuable information on the testing for economy and power and the erection of power plants.

The rules and regulations of the Board of Fire Underwriters in regard to the installation and management of gasoline motors is given in full, suggesting the safe installation of explosive motor power. A list of United States Patents issued on gas, gasoline, and oil engines and their adjuncts from 1875 to date is included. 640 pages. 435 engravings. Folding plates. Price $2.50

GAS ENGINE CONSTRUCTION, OR HOW TO BUILD A HALF-HORSE-POWER GAS ENGINE. By PARSELL and WEED.

A practical treatise of 300 pages describing the theory and principles of the action of Gas Engines of various types and the design and construction of a half-horse-power Gas Engine, with illustrations of the work in actual progress, together with the dimensioned working drawings, giving clearly the sizes of the various details; for the student, the scientific investigator, and the amateur mechanic. This book treats of the subject more from the standpoint of practice than that of theory. The principles of operation of Gas Engines are clearly and simply described, and then the actual construction of a half-horse-power engine is taken up, step by step, showing in detail the making of the Gas Engine. 3d Edition. 300 pages. Price $2.50

HOW TO RUN AND INSTALL GASOLINE ENGINES. By C. VON CULIN.

Revised and enlarged edition just issued. The object of this little book is to furnish a pocket instructor for the beginner, the busy man who uses an engine for pleasure or profit, but who does not have the time or inclination for a technical book, but simply to thoroughly understand how to properly operate, install and care for his own engine. The index refers to each trouble, remedy, and subject alphabetically. Being a quick reference to find the cause, remedy and prevention for troubles, and to become an expert with his own engine. Pocket size. Paper binding. Price . . 25 cents

MODERN GAS ENGINES AND PRODUCER GAS PLANTS. By R. E. MATHOT.

A guide for the gas engine designer, user, and engineer in the construction, selection, purchase, installation, operation, and maintenance of gas engines. More than one book on gas engines has been written, but not one has thus far even encroached on the field covered by this book. Above all Mr. Mathot's work is a practical guide. Recognizing the need of a volume that would assist the gas engine user in understanding thoroughly the motor upon which he depends for power, the author has discussed his subject without the help of any mathematics and without elaborate theoretical explanations. Every part of the gas engine is described in detail, tersely, clearly, with a thorough understanding of the requirements of the mechanic. Helpful suggestions as to the purchase of an engine, its installation, care, and operation, form a most valuable feature of the work. 320 pages. 175 detailed illustrations. Price . $2.50

THE MODERN GAS TRACTOR. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ.

A complete treatise describing all types and sizes of gasoline, kerosene and oil tractors. Considers design and construction exhaustively, gives complete instructions for care, operation and repair, outlines all practical applications on the road and in the field. The best and latest work on farm tractors and tractor power plants. A work needed by farmers, students, blacksmiths, mechanics, salesmen, implement dealers, designers and engineers. 500 pages. Nearly 300 illustrations and folding plates. Price $2.00

GEARING AND CAMS

BEVEL GEAR TABLES. By D. AG. ENGSTROM.

A book that will at once commend itself to mechanics and draftsmen. Does away with all the trigonometry and fancy figuring on bevel gears, and makes it easy for anyone to lay them out or make them just right. There are 36 full-page tables that show every necessary dimension for all sizes or combinations you're apt to need. No puzzling, figuring or guessing. Gives placing distance, all the angles (including cutting angles), and the correct cutter to use. A copy of this prepares you for anything in the bevel-gear line. 3d Edition. 66 pages. $1.00

CHANGE GEAR DEVICES. By OSCAR E. PERRIGO.

A practical book for every designer, draftsman, and mechanic interested in the invention and development of the devices for feed changes on the different machines requiring such mechanism. All the necessary information on this subject is taken up, analyzed, classified, sifted, and concentrated for the use of busy men who have not the *time to go through* the masses of irrelevant matter with which such a subject is usually encumbered and select such information as will be useful to them.

It shows just what has been done, how it has been done, when it was done, and who did it. It saves time in hunting up patent records and re-inventing old ideas. 88 pages. $1.00

RAFTING OF CAMS. By Louis Rouillion.
The laying out of cams is a serious problem unless you know how to go at it right. This puts you on the right road for practically any kind of cam you are likely to run up against. 3d Edition. . . . . 25 cents

HYDRAULICS

YDRAULIC ENGINEERING. By Gardner D. Hiscox.
A treatise on the properties, power, and resources of water for all purposes. Including the measurement of streams, the flow of water in pipes or conduits; the horse-power of falling water, turbine and impact water-wheels, wave motors, centrifugal, reciprocating and air-lift pumps. With 300 figures and diagrams and 36 practical tables. All who are interested in water-works development will find this book a useful one, because it is an entirely practical treatise upon a subject of present importance, and cannot fail in having a far-reaching influence, and for this reason should have a place in the working library of every engineer. Among the subjects treated are: Historical Hydraulics, Properties of Water, Measurement of the Flow of Streams; Flow from Sub-surface Orifices and Nozzles; Flow of Water in Pipes; Siphons of Various Kinds; Dams and Great Storage Reservoirs; City and Town Water Supply; Wells and Their Reinforcement; Air Lift Methods of Raising Water; Artesian Wells; Irrigation of Arid Districts; Water Power; Water Wheels; Pumps and Pumping Machinery; Reciprocating Pumps; Hydraulic Power Transmission; Hydraulic Mining; Canals; Ditches; Conduits and Pipe Lines; Marine Hydraulics; Tidal and Sea Wave Power, etc. 320 pages. Price $4.00

INVENTIONS—PATENTS

VENTORS' MANUAL, HOW TO MAKE A PATENT PAY.
This is a book designed as a guide to inventors in perfecting their inventions, taking out their patents and disposing of them. It is not in any sense a Patent Solicitor's Circular nor a Patent Broker's Advertisement. No advertisements of any description appear in the work. It is a book containing a quarter of a century's experience of a successful inventor, together with notes based upon the experience of many other inventors.

Among the subjects treated in this work are: How to Invent. How to Secure a Good Patent. Value of Good Invention. How to Exhibit an Invention. How to Interest Capital. How to Estimate the Value of a Patent. Value of Design Patents. Value of Foreign Patents. Value of Small Inventions. Advice on Selling Patents. Advice on the Formation of Stock Companies. Advice on the Formation of Limited Liability Companies. Advice on Disposing of Old Patents. Advice as to Patent Attorneys. Advice as to Selling Agents. Forms of Assignments. License and Contracts. State Laws Concerning Patent Rights. 1900 Census of the United States by Counts of Over 10,000 Population. Revised edition. 120 pages. Price . . $1.00

KNOTS

NOTS, SPLICES AND ROPE WORK. By A. Hyatt Verrill.
This is a practical book giving complete and simple directions for making all the most useful and ornamental knots in common use, with chapters on Splicing, Pointing, Seizing, Serving, etc. This book is fully illustrated with one hundred and fifty original engravings, which show how each knot, tie or splice is formed, and its appearance when finished. The book will be found of the greatest value to Campers, Yachtsmen, Travelers, Boy Scouts, in fact, to anyone having occasion to use or handle rope or knots for any purpose. The book is thoroughly reliable and practical, and is not only a guide, but a teacher. It is the standard work on the subject. Among the contents are: 1. Cordage, Kinds of Rope. Construction of Rope, Parts of Rope Cable and Bolt Rope. Strength of Rope, Weight of Rope. 2. Simple Knots and Bends. Terms Used in Handling Rope. Seizing Rope. 3. Ties and Hitches. 4. Noose, Loops and Mooring Knots. 5. Shortenings, Grommets and Salvages. 6. Lashings, Seizings and Splices. 7. Fancy Knots and Rope Work. 128 pages. 150 original engravings. Price . . . . . 60 cents

LATHE WORK

LATHE DESIGN, CONSTRUCTION, AND OPERATION, WITH PRACTICAL EXAMPLES OF LATHE WORK. By OSCAR E. PERRIGO.

A new revised edition, and the only complete American work on the subject, written by a man who knows not only how work ought to be done, but who also knows how to do it, and how to convey this knowledge to others. It is strictly up-to-date in its descriptions and illustrations. Lathe history and the relations of the lathe to manufacturing are given; also a description of the various devices for feeds and thread cutting mechanisms from early efforts in this direction to the present time. Lathe design is thoroughly discussed, including back gearing, driving cones, thread-cutting gears, and all the essential elements of the modern lathe. The classification of lathes is taken up, giving the essential differences of the several types of lathes including, as is usually understood, engine lathes, bench lathes, speed lathes, forge lathes, gap lathes, pulley lathes, forming lathes, multiple-spindle lathes, rapid-reduction lathes, precision lathes, turret lathes, special lathes, electrically-driven lathes, etc. In addition to the complete exposition on construction and design, much practical matter on lathe installation, care and operation has been incorporated in the enlarged 1915 edition. All kinds of lathe attachments for drilling, milling, etc., are described and complete instructions are given to enable the novice machinist to grasp the art of lathe operation as well as the principles involved in design. A number of difficult machining operations are described at length and illustrated. The new edition has nearly 500 pages and 350 illustrations. Price **$2.50**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"This is a lathe book from beginning to end, and is just the kind of a book which one delights to consult,—a masterly treatment of the subject in hand."—*Engineering News*.

"This work will be of exceptional interest to anyone who is interested in lathe practice, as one very seldom sees such a complete treatise on a subject as this is on the lathe."—*Canadian Machinery*.

TURNING AND BORING TAPERS. By FRED H. COLVIN.

There are two ways to turn tapers; the right way and one other. This treatise has to do with the right way; it tells you how to start the work properly, how to set the lathe, what tools to use and how to use them, and forty and one other little things that you should know. Fourth edition . . . . . **25 cents**

LIQUID AIR

LIQUID AIR AND THE LIQUEFACTION OF GASES. By T. O'CONOR SLOANE.

This book gives the history of the theory, discovery, and manufacture of Liquid Air, and contains an illustrated description of all the experiments that have excited the wonder of audiences all over the country. It shows how liquid air, like water, is carried hundreds of miles and is handled in open buckets. It tells what may be expected from it in the near future.

A book that renders simple one of the most perplexing chemical problems of the century. Startling developments illustrated by actual experiments.

It is not only a work of scientific interest and authority, but is intended for the general reader, being written in a popular style—easily understood by every one. Second edition. 365 pages. Price **$2.00**

LOCOMOTIVE ENGINEERING

AIR-BRAKE CATECHISM. By ROBERT H. BLACKALL.

This book is a standard text book. It covers the Westinghouse Air-Brake Equipment, including the No. 5 and the No. 6 E. T. Locomotive Brake Equipment; the K (Quick Service) Triple Valve for Freight Service; and the Cross-Compound Pump. The operation of all parts of the apparatus is explained in detail, and a practical way of finding their peculiarities and defects, with a proper remedy, is given. It contains 2,000 questions with their answers, which will enable any railroad man to pass any examination on the subject of Air Brakes. Endorsed and used by air-brake instructors and examiners on nearly every railroad in the United States. 26th Edition. 411 pages, fully illustrated with colored plates and diagrams. **$2.00**

AMERICAN COMPOUND LOCOMOTIVES. By FRED H. COLVIN.

The only book on compounds for the engineman or shopman that shows in a plain practical way the various features of compound locomotives in use. Shows how they are made, what to do when they break down or balk. Contains sections as follows:—A Bit of History. Theory of Compounding Steam Cylinders. Baldwin Two-Cylinder Compound. Pittsburg Two-Cylinder Compound. Rhode Island Compound. Richmond Compound. Rogers Compound. Schenectady Two-Cylinder Compound. Vauclain Compound. Tandem Compounds. Baldwin Tandem. The Colvin-Wightman Tandem. Schenectady Tandem. Balanced Locomotives. Baldwin Balanced Compound. Plans for Balancing. Locating Blows. Breakdowns. Reducing Valves. Drifting. Valve Motion. Disconnecting. Power of Compound Locomotives. Practical Notes.

Fully illustrated and containing ten special "Duotone" inserts on heavy Plate Paper, showing different types of Compounds. 142 pages. Price **$1.00**

COMBUSTION OF COAL AND THE PREVENTION OF SMOKE. By WM. M. BARR.

This book has been prepared with special reference to the generation of heat by the combustion of the common fuels found in the United States and deals particularly with the conditions necessary to the economic and smokeless combustion of bituminous coal in Stationary and Locomotive Steam Boilers.

Presentation of this important subject is systematic and progressive. The arrangement of the book is in a series of practical questions to which are appended accurate answers, which describe in language free from technicalities the several processes involved in the furnace combustion of American fuels; it clearly states the essential requisites for perfect combustion, and points out the best methods of furnace construction for obtaining the greatest quantity of heat from any given quality of coal. Nearly 350 pages, fully illustrated. Price **$1.00**

DIARY OF A ROUND-HOUSE FOREMAN. By T. S. REILLY.

This is the greatest book of railroad experiences ever published. Containing a fund of information and suggestions along the line of handling men, organizing, etc., that one cannot afford to miss. 176 pages. Price **$1.00**

LINK MOTIONS, VALVES AND VALVE SETTING. By FRED H. COLVIN, Associate Editor of *American Machinist.*

A handy book for the engineer or machinist that clears up the mysteries of valve setting. Shows the different valve gears in use, how they work, and why. Piston and slide valves of different types are illustrated and explained. A book that every railroad man in the motive power department ought to have. Contains chapters on Locomotive Link Motion, Valve Movements, Setting Slide Valves, Analysis by Diagrams, Modern Practice, Slip of Block, Slice Valves, Piston Valves, Setting Piston Valves, Joy-Allen Valve Gear, Walschaert Valve Gear, Gooch Valve Gear, Alfree-Hubbell Valve Gear, etc., etc. Fully illustrated. Price . . . . . **50 cents**

LOCOMOTIVE BOILER CONSTRUCTION. By FRANK A. KLEINHANS.

The construction of boilers in general is treated, and, following this, the locomotive boiler is taken up in the order in which its various parts go through the shop. Shows all types of boilers used; gives details of construction; practical facts, such as life of riveting, punches and dies; work done per day, allowance for bending and flanging sheets, and other data. Including the recent Locomotive Boiler Inspection Laws and Examination Questions with their answers for Government Inspectors. Contains chapters on Laying Out Work; Flanging and Forging; Punching; Shearing; Plate Planing; General Tables; Finishing Parts; Bending; Machinery Parts; Riveting; Boiler Details; Smoke Box Details; Assembling and Calking; Boiler Shop Machinery, etc., etc.

There isn't a man who has anything to do with boiler work, either new or repair work, who doesn't need this book. The manufacturer, superintendent, foreman, and boiler worker—all need it. No matter what the type of boiler, you'll find a mint of information that you wouldn't be without. Over 400 pages, five large folding plates. Price **$3.00**

LOCOMOTIVE BREAKDOWNS AND THEIR REMEDIES. By GEO. L. FOWLER Revised by WM. W. WOOD, Air-Brake Instructor. Just issued. Revised pocket edition.

It is out of the question to try and tell you about every subject that is covered in this pocket edition of Locomotive Breakdowns. Just imagine all the common troubles that an engineer may expect to happen some time, and then add all of the unexpected ones, troubles that could occur, but that you have never thought about, and you will find that they are all treated with the very best methods of repair. Walschaert Locomotive Valve Gear Troubles, Electric Headlight Troubles, as well as Questions and Answers on the Air Brake are all included. 312 pages. 8th Revised Edition. Fully illustrated. $1.00

LOCOMOTIVE CATECHISM. By ROBERT GRIMSHAW.

The revised edition of "Locomotive Catechism," by Robert Grimshaw, is a New Book from Cover to Cover. It contains twice as many pages and double the number of illustrations of previous editions. Includes the greatest amount of practical information ever published on the construction and management of modern locomotives. Specially Prepared Chapters on the Walschaert Locomotive Valve Gear, the Air-Brake Equipment and the Electric Head Light are given.

It commends itself at once to every Engineer and Fireman, and to all who are going in for examination or promotion. In plain language, with full, complete answers, not only all the questions asked by the examining engineer are given, but those which the young and less experienced would ask the veteran, and which old hands ask as "stickers." It is a veritable Encyclopedia of the Locomotive, is entirely free from mathematics, easily understood and thoroughly up-to-date. Contains over 4,000 Examination Questions with their Answers. 825 pages, 437 illustrations and three folding plates. 28th Revised Edition. $2.50

PRACTICAL INSTRUCTOR AND REFERENCE BOOK FOR LOCOMOTIVE FIREMEN AND ENGINEERS. By CHAS. F. LOCKHART.

An entirely new book on the Locomotive. It appeals to every railroad man, as it tells him how things are done and the right way to do them. Written by a man who has had years of practical experience in locomotive shops and on the road firing and running. The information given in this book cannot be found in any other similar treatise. Eight hundred and fifty-one questions with their answers are included, which will prove specially helpful to those preparing for examination. Practical information on: The Construction and Operation of Locomotives; Breakdowns and their Remedies; Air Brakes and Valve Gears. Rules and Signals are handled in a thorough manner. As a book of reference it cannot be excelled. The book is divided into six parts, as follows: 1. The Fireman's Duties. 2. General Description of the Locomotive. 3. Breakdowns and their Remedies. 4. Air Brakes. 5. Extracts from Standard Rules. 6. Questions for Examination. The 851 questions have been carefully selected and arranged. These cover the examinations required by the different railroads. 368 pages. 88 illustrations. Price $1.50

PREVENTION OF RAILROAD ACCIDENTS, OR SAFETY IN RAILROADING. By GEORGE BRADSHAW.

This book is a heart-to-heart talk with Railroad Employees, dealing with facts, not theories, and showing the men in the ranks, from every-day experience, how accidents occur and how they may be avoided. The book is illustrated with seventy original photographs and drawings showing the safe and unsafe methods of work. No visionary schemes, no ideal pictures. Just plain facts and Practical Suggestions are given. Every railroad employee who reads the book is a better and safer man to have in railroad service. It gives just the information which will be the means of preventing many injuries and deaths. All railroad employees should procure a copy; read it, and do your part in preventing accidents. 169 pages. Pocket size. Fully illustrated. Price . . . . . 50 cents

TRAIN RULE EXAMINATIONS MADE EASY. By G. E. COLLINGWOOD.

This is the only practical work on train rules in print. Every detail is covered, and puzzling points are explained in simple, comprehensive language, making it a practical treatise for the Train Dispatcher, Engineman, Trainman, and all others who have to do with the movements of trains. Contains complete and reliable information of the Standard Code of Train Rules for single track. Shows Signals in Colors, as used on the different roads. Explains fully the practical application of train orders, giving a

clear and definite understanding of all orders which may be used. The meaning and necessity for certain rules are explained in such a manner that the student may know beyond a doubt the rights conferred under any orders he may receive or the action required by certain rules. As nearly all roads require trainmen to pass regular examinations, a complete set of examination questions, with their answers, are included. These will enable the student to pass the required examinations with credit to himself and the road for which he works. 256 pages. Fully illustrated with Train Signals in Colors. Price $1.25

THE WALSCHAERT AND OTHER MODERN RADIAL VALVE GEARS FOR LOCOMOTIVES. By Wm. W. Wood.

If you would thoroughly understand the Walschaert Valve Gear you should possess a copy of this book, as the author takes the plainest form of a steam engine—a stationary engine in the rough, that will only turn its crank in one direction—and from it builds up—with the reader's help—a modern locomotive equipped with the Walschaert Valve Gear, complete. The points discussed are clearly illustrated; two large folding plates that show the positions of the valves of both inside or outside admission type, as well as the links and other parts of the gear when the crank is at nine different points in its revolution, are especially valuable in making the movement clear. These employ sliding cardboard models which are contained in a pocket in the cover.

The book is divided into five general divisions, as follows: 1. Analysis of the gear. 2. Designing and erecting the gear. 3. Advantages of the gear. 4. Questions and answers relating to the Walschaert Valve Gear. 5. Setting valves with the Walschaert Valve Gear; the three primary types of locomotive valve motion; modern radial valve gears other than the Walschaert; the Hobart All-free Valve and Valve Gear, with questions and answers on breakdowns; the Baker-Pilliod Valve Gear; the Improved Baker-Pilliod Valve Gear, with questions and answers on breakdowns.

The questions with full answers given will be especially valuable to firemen and engineers in preparing for an examination for promotion. 245 pages. Third Revised Edition. Price $1.50

WESTINGHOUSE E-T AIR-BRAKE INSTRUCTION POCKET BOOK. By Wm. W. Wood, Air-Brake Instructor.

Here is a book for the railroad man, and the man who aims to be one. It is without doubt the only complete work published on the Westinghouse E-T Locomotive Brake Equipment. Written by an Air-Brake Instructor who knows just what is needed. It covers the subject thoroughly. Everything about the New Westinghouse Engine and Tender Brake Equipment, including the standard No. 5 and the Perfected No. 6 style of brake, is treated in detail. Written in plain English and profusely illustrated with Colored Plates, which enable one to trace the flow of pressures throughout the entire equipment. The best book ever published on the Air Brake. Equally good for the beginner and the advanced engineer. Will pass any one through any examination. It informs and enlightens you on every point. Indispensable to every engineman and trainman.

Contains examination questions and answers on the E-T equipment. Covering what the E-T Brake is. How it should be operated. What to do when defective. Not a question can be asked of the engineman up for promotion, on either the No. 5 or the No. 6 E-T equipment, that is not asked and answered in the book. If you want to thoroughly understand the E-T equipment get a copy of this book. It covers every detail. Makes Air-Brake troubles and examinations easy. Price $1.50

MACHINE-SHOP PRACTICE

AMERICAN TOOL MAKING AND INTERCHANGEABLE MANUFACTURING. By J. V. Woodworth.

A "shoppy" book, containing no theorizing, no problematical or experimental devices, there are no badly proportioned and impossible diagrams, no catalogue cuts, but a valuable collection of drawings and descriptions of devices, the rich fruits of the author's own experience. In its 500-odd pages the one subject only, Tool Making, and whatever relates thereto, is dealt with. The work stands without a rival. It is a complete practical treatise on the art of American Tool Making and system of interchangeable manufacturing as carried on to-day in the United States. In it are described and illustrated all of the different types and classes of small tools, fixtures, devices, and special appliances which are in general use in all machine-manufacturing and metal-working establishments where economy, capacity, and interchangeability in the production of machined metal parts are imperative. The science of jig making is exhaust-

ively discussed, and particular attention is paid to drill jigs, boring, profiling and milling fixtures and other devices in which the parts to be machined are located and fastened within the contrivances. All of the tools, fixtures, and devices illustrated and described have been or are used for the actual production of work, such as parts of drill presses, lathes, patented machinery, typewriters, electrical apparatus, mechanical appliances, brass goods, composition parts, mould products, sheet metal articles, drop-forgings, jewelry, watches, medals, coins, etc. 531 pages. Price **$4.00**

MACHINE-SHOP ARITHMETIC. By COLVIN-CHENEY.

This is an arithmetic of the things you have to do with daily. It tells you plainly about: how to find areas in figures; how to find surface or volume of balls or spheres; handy ways for calculating; about compound gearing; cutting screw threads on any lathe; drilling for taps; speeds of drills; taps, emery wheels, grindstones, milling cutters, etc.; all about the Metric system with conversion tables; properties of metals; strength of bolts and nuts; decimal equivalent of an inch. All sorts of machine-shop figuring and 1,001 other things, any one of which ought to be worth more than the price of this book to you, and it saves you the trouble of bothering the boss. 6th edition. 131 pages. Price . . . . . **50 cents**

MODERN MACHINE-SHOP CONSTRUCTION, EQUIPMENT AND MANAGEMENT. By OSCAR E. PERRIGO.

The only work published that describes the Modern Shop or Manufacturing Plant from the time the grass is growing on the site intended for it until the finished product is shipped. Just the book needed by those contemplating the erection of modern shop buildings, the rebuilding and reorganization of old ones, or the introduction of Modern Shop Methods, time and cost systems. It is a book written and illustrated by a practical shop man for practical shop men who are too busy to read theories and want facts. It is the most complete all-round book of its kind ever published. 400 large quarto pages. 225 original and specially-made illustrations. 2d Revised and Enlarged Edition. Price **$5.00**

THE WHOLE FIELD OF MECHANICAL MOVEMENTS COVERED BY MR. HISCOX'S TWO BOOKS

We publish two books by Gardner D. Hiscox that will keep you from "inventing" things that have been done before, and suggest ways of doing things that you have not thought of before. Many a man spends time and money, pondering over some mechanical problem, only to learn, after he has solved the problem, that the same thing has been accomplished and put in practice by others long before. Time and money spent in an effort to accomplish what has already been accomplished are time and money LOST. The whole field of mechanics, every known mechanical movement, and practically every device is covered by these two books. If the thing you want has been invented, it is illustrated in them. If it hasn't been invented, then you'll find in them the nearest things to what you want, some movements or devices that will apply in your case, perhaps; or which will give you a key from which to work. No book or set of books ever published is of more real value to the Inventor, Draftsman, or practical Mechanic than the two volumes described below.

MECHANICAL MOVEMENTS, POWERS, AND DEVICES. By GARDNER D. HISCOX.

This is a collection of 1,890 engravings of different mechanical motions and appliances, accompanied by appropriate text, making it a book of great value to the inventor, the draftsman, and to all readers with mechanical tastes. The book is divided into eighteen sections or chapters, in which the subject-matter is classified under the following heads: Mechanical Powers; Transmission of Power; Measurement of Power; Steam Power; Air Power Appliances; Electric Power and Construction; Navigation and Roads; Gearing; Motion and Devices; Controlling Motion; Horological; Mining; Mill and Factory Appliances; Construction and Devices; Drafting Devices; Miscellaneous Devices, etc. 12th edition. 400 octavo pages. Price . . . **$2.50**

MECHANICAL APPLIANCES, MECHANICAL MOVEMENTS AND NOVELTIES OF CONSTRUCTION. By GARDNER D. HISCOX.

This is a supplementary volume to the one upon mechanical movements. Unlike the first volume, which is more elementary in character, this volume contains illustrations and descriptions of many combinations of motions and of mechanical devices and

appliances found in different lines of machinery, each device being shown by a line drawing with a description showing its working parts and the method of operation. From the multitude of devices described and illustrated might be mentioned, in passing, such items as conveyors and elevators, Prony brakes, thermometers, various types of boilers, solar engines, oil-fuel burners, condensers, evaporators, Corliss and other valve gears, governors, gas engines, water motors of various descriptions, air ships, motors and dynamos, automobile and motor bicycles, railway lock signals, car couplers, link and gear motions, ball bearings, breech block mechanism for heavy guns, and a large accumulation of others of equal importance. 1,000 specially made engravings. 396 octavo pages. 2d Edition. Price **$2.50**

MACHINE-SHOP TOOLS AND SHOP PRACTICE. By W. H. VANDERVOORT.

A work of 555 pages and 673 illustrations, describing in every detail the construction, operation, and manipulation of both hand and machine tools. Includes chapters on filing, fitting, and scraping surfaces; on drills, reamers, taps, and dies; the lathe and its tools; planers, shapers, and their tools; milling machines and cutters; gear cutters and gear cutting; drilling machines and drill work; grinding machines and their work; hardening and tempering; gearing, belting, and transmission machinery; useful data and tables. 6th edition. Price **$3.00**

THE MODERN MACHINIST. By JOHN T. USHER.

This is a book showing, by plain description and by profuse engravings made expressly for the work, all that is best, most advanced, and of the highest efficiency in modern machine-shop practice, tools, and implements, showing the way by which and through which, as Mr. Maxim says, "American machinists have become and are the finest mechanics in the world." Indicating as it does, in every line, the familiarity of the author with every detail of daily experience in the shop, it cannot fail to be of service to any man practically connected with the shaping or finishing of metals.

There is nothing experimental or visionary about the book, all devices being in actual use and giving good results. It might be called a compendium of shop methods, showing a variety of special tools and appliances which will give new ideas to many mechanics, from the superintendent down to the man at the bench. It will be found a valuable edition to any machinist's library, and should be consulted whenever a new or difficult job is to be done, whether it is boring, milling, turning, or planing, as they are all treated in a practical manner. Fifth edition. 320 pages. 250 illustrations. Price **$2.50**

"SHOP KINKS." By ROBERT GRIMSHAW.

A book of 400 pages and 222 illustrations, being entirely different from any other book on machine-shop practice. Departing from conventional style, the author avoids universal or common shop usage and limits his work to showing special ways of doing things better, more cheaply and more rapidly than usual. As a result the advanced methods of representative establishments of the world are placed at the disposal of the reader. This book shows the proprietor where large savings are possible, and how products may be improved. To the employee it holds out suggestions that, properly applied, will hasten his advancement. No shop can afford to be without it. It bristles with valuable wrinkles and helpful suggestions. It will benefit all, from apprentice to proprietor. Every machinist, at any age, should study its pages. Fifth edition. Price **$2.50**

THREADS AND THREAD CUTTING. By COLVIN and STABEL.

This clears up many of the mysteries of thread-cutting, such as double and triple threads, internal threads, catching threads, use of hobs, etc. Contains a lot of useful hints and several tables. Third edition. Price . . . . . **25 cents**

MANUAL TRAINING

ECONOMICS OF MANUAL TRAINING. By LOUIS ROUILLION.

The only book published that gives just the information needed by all interested in Manual Training, regarding Buildings, Equipment, and Supplies. Shows exactly what is needed for all grades of the work from the Kindergarten to the High and Normal School. Gives itemized lists of everything used in Manual Training Work and tells just what it ought to cost. Also shows where to buy supplies, etc. Contains *174 pages, and is fully* illustrated. 2d edition. Price **$1.50**

MARINE ENGINEERING

MODERN SUBMARINE CHART.

A cross-section view, showing clearly and distinctly all the interior of a Submarine of the latest type. You get more information from this chart about the construction and operation of a submarine than in any other way. No details omitted—everything is accurate and to scale. It is absolutely correct in every detail, having been approved by naval engineers. All the machinery and devices fitted in a modern Submarine Boat are shown, and to make the engraving more readily understood all the features are shown in operative form, with Officers and Men in the act of performing the duties assigned to them in service conditions. THIS CHART IS REALLY AN ENCYCLOPEDIA OF A SUBMARINE. It is educational and worth many times its cost. Mailed in a tube for . . . . . **25 cents**

PATTERN MAKING

PRACTICAL PATTERN MAKING. By F. W. Barrows.

This book, now in its second edition, is a comprehensive and entirely practical treatise on the subject of pattern making, illustrating pattern work in both wood and metal, and with definite instructions on the use of plaster of paris in the trade. It gives specific and detailed descriptions of the materials used by pattern makers and describes the tools, both those for the bench and the more interesting machine tools; having complete chapters on the Lathe, the Circular Saw, and the Band Saw. It gives many examples of pattern work, each one fully illustrated and explained with much detail. These examples, in their great variety, offer much that will be found of interest to all pattern makers, and especially to the younger ones, who are seeking information on the more advanced branches of their trade.

In this second edition of the work will be found much that is new, even to those who have long practised this exacting trade. In the description of patterns as adapted to the Moulding Machine many difficulties which have long prevented the rapid and economical production of castings are overcome; and this great, new branch of the trade is given much space. Stripping plate and stool plate work and the less expensive vibrator, or rapping plate work, are all explained in detail.

Plain, everyday rules for lessening the cost of patterns, with a complete system of cost keeping, a detailed method of marking, applicable to all branches of the trade, with complete information showing what the pattern is, its specific title, its cost, date of production, material of which it is made, the number of pieces and core-boxes, and its location in the pattern safe, all condensed into a most complete card record, with cross index.

The book closes with an original and practical method for the inventory and valuation of patterns. Containing nearly 350 pages and 170 illustrations. Price . **$2.00**

PERFUMERY

PERFUMES AND COSMETICS, THEIR PREPARATION AND MANUFACTURE.

By G. W. Askinson, Perfumer.

A comprehensive treatise, in which there has been nothing omitted that could be of value to the perfumer or manufacturer of toilet preparations. Complete directions for making handkerchief perfumes, smelling-salts, sachets, fumigating pastilles; preparations for the care of the skin, the mouth, the hair, cosmetics, hair dyes and other toilet articles are given, also a detailed description of aromatic substances; their nature, tests of purity, and wholesale manufacture, including a chapter on synthetic products, with formulas for their use. A book of general, as well as professional interest, meeting the wants not only of the druggist and perfume manufacturer, but also of the general public. Among the contents are: 1. The History of Perfumery. 2. About Aromatic Substances in General. 3. Odors from the Vegetable Kingdom. 4. The Aromatic Vegetable Substances Employed in Perfumery. 5. The Animal Substances Used in Perfumery. 6. The Chemical Products Used in Perfumery. 7. The Extraction of Odors. 8. The Special Characteristics of Aromatic Substances. 9. The Adulteration of Essential Oils and Their Recognition. 10. Synthetic Products. 11. Table of Physical Properties of Aromatic Chemicals. 12. The Essences or Extracts Employed *in Perfumery*. *13.* Directions for Making the Most Important Essences and Extracts.

14. The Division of Perfumery. 15. The Manufacture of Handkerchief Perfumes. 16. Formulas for Handkerchief Perfumes. 17. Ammoniacal and Acid Perfumes. 18. Dry Perfumes. 19. Formulas for Dry Perfumes. 20. The Perfumes Used for Fumigation. 21. Antiseptic and Therapeutic Value of Perfumes. 22. Classification of Odors. 23. Some Special Perfumery Products. 24. Hygiene and Cosmetic Perfumery. 25. Preparations for the Care of the Skin. 26. Manufacture of Casein. 27. Formulas for Emulsions. 28. Formulas for Cream. 29. Formulas for Meals, Pastes and Vegetable Milk. 30. Preparations Used for the Hair. 31. Formulas for Hair Tonics and Restorers. 32. Pomades and Hair Oils. 33. Formulas for the Manufacture of Pomades and Hair Oils. 34. Hair Dyes and Depilatories. 35. Wax Pomades, Bandolines and Brilliantines. 36. Skin Cosmetics and Face Lotions. 37. Preparations for the Nails. 38. Water Softeners and Bath Salts. 39. Preparations for the Care of the Mouth. 40. The Colors Used in Perfumery. 41. The Utensils Used in the Toilet. Fourth edition much enlarged and brought up-to-date. Nearly 400 pages, illustrated. Price **$5.00**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"The most satisfactory work on the subject of Perfumery that we have ever seen."

"We feel safe in saying that here is a book on Perfumery that will not disappoint you, for it has practical and excellent formulæ that are within your ability to prepare readily.

"We recommend the volume as worthy of confidence, and say that no purchaser will be disappointed in securing from its pages good value for its cost, and a large dividend on the same, even if he should use but one per cent of its working formulæ. There is money in it for every user of its information."—*Pharmaceutical Record.*

PLUMBING

MECHANICAL DRAWING FOR PLUMBERS. By R. M. STARBUCK.

A concise, comprehensive and practical treatise on the subject of mechanical drawing in its various modern applications to the work of all who are in any way connected with the plumbing trade. Nothing will so help the plumber in estimating and in explaining work to customers and workmen as a knowledge of drawing, and to the workman it is of inestimable value if he is to rise above his position to positions of greater responsibility. Among the chapters contained are: 1. Value to plumber of knowledge of drawing; tools required and their use; common views needed in mechanical drawing. 2. Perspective versus mechanical drawing in showing plumbing construction. 3. Correct and incorrect methods in plumbing drawing; plan and elevation explained. 4. Floor and cellar plans and elevation; scale drawings; use of triangles. 5. Use of triangles; drawing of fittings, traps, etc. 6. Drawing plumbing elevations and fittings. 7. Instructions in drawing plumbing elevations. 8. The drawing of plumbing fixtures; scale drawings. 9. Drawings of fixtures and fittings. 10. Inking of drawings. 11. Shading of drawings. 12. Shading of drawings. 13. Sectional drawings; drawing of threads. 14. Plumbing elevations from architect's plan. 15. Elevations of separate parts of the plumbing system. 16. Elevations from the architect's plans. 17. Drawings of detail plumbing connections. 18. Architect's plans and plumbing elevations of residence. 19. Plumbing elevations of residence (continued); plumbing plans for cottage. 20. Plumbing elevations; roof connections. 21. Plans and plumbing elevations for six-flat building. 22. Drawing of various parts of the plumbing system; use of scales. 23. Use of architect's scales. 24. Special features in the illustrations of country plumbing. 25. Drawing of wrought-iron piping, valves, radiators, coils, etc. 26. Drawing of piping to illustrate heating systems. 150 illustrations. Price **$1.50**

MODERN PLUMBING ILLUSTRATED. By R. M. STARBUCK.

This book represents the highest standard of plumbing work. It has been adopted and used as a reference book by the United States Government, in its sanitary work in Cuba, Porto Rico, and the Philippines, and by the principal Boards of Health of the United States and Canada.

It gives connections, sizes and working data for all fixtures and groups of fixtures. It is helpful to the master plumber in demonstrating to his customers and in figuring work. It gives the mechanic and student quick and easy access to the best modern plumbing practice. Suggestions for estimating plumbing construction are contained in its pages. This book represents, in a word, the latest and best up-to-date practice

and should be in the hands of every architect, sanitary engineer and plumber who wishes to keep himself up to the minute on this important feature of construction. Contains following chapters, each illustrated with a full-page plate: Kitchen sink, laundry tubs, vegetable wash sink; lavatories, pantry sinks, contents of marble slabs; bath tub, foot and sitz bath, shower bath; water closets, venting of water closets; low-down water closets, water closets operated by flush valves, water closet range; slop sink, urinals, the bidet; hotel and restaurant sink, grease trap; refrigerators, safe wastes, laundry waste, lines of refrigerators, bar sinks, soda fountain sinks; horse stall, frost-proof water closets; connections for S traps, venting; connections for drum traps; soil pipe connections; supporting of soil pipe; main trap and fresh air inlet; floor drains and cellar drains, subsoil drainage; water closets and floor connections; local venting; connections for bath rooms; connections for bath rooms, continued; connections for bath rooms, continued; connections for bath rooms, continued; examples of poor practice; roughing work ready for test; testing of plumbing system; method of continuous venting; continuous venting for two-floor work; continuous venting for two lines of fixtures on three or more floors; continuous venting of water closets; plumbing for cottage house; construction for cellar piping; plumbing for residence, use of special fittings; plumbing for two-flat house; plumbing for apartment building, plumbing for double apartment building; plumbing for office building; plumbing for public toilet rooms; plumbing for public toilet rooms, continued; plumbing for bath establishment; plumbing for engine house, factory plumbing; automatic flushing for schools, factories, etc.; use of flushing valves; urinals for public toilet rooms; the Durham system, the destruction of pipes by electrolysis; construction of work without use of lead; automatic sewage lift; automatic sump tank; country plumbing; construction of cesspools; septic tank and automatic sewage siphon; country plumbing; water supply for country house; thawing of water mains and service by electricity; double boilers; hot water supply of large buildings; automatic control of hot water tank; suggestion for estimating plumbing construction. 407 octavo pages, fully illustrated by 58 full-page engravings. Third, revised and enlarged edition just issued. Price . **$4.00**

STANDARD PRACTICAL PLUMBING. By R. M. STARBUCK.

A complete practical treatise of 450 pages covering the subject of Modern Plumbing in all its branches, a large amount of space being devoted to a very complete and practical treatment of the subject of Hot Water Supply and Circulation and Range Boiler Work. Its thirty chapters include about every phase of the subject one can think of, making it an indispensable work to the master plumber, the journeyman plumber, and the apprentice plumber, containing chapters on: the plumber's tools; wiping solder; composition and use; joint wiping; lead work; traps; siphonage of traps; venting; continuous venting; house sewer and sewer connections; house drain; soil piping, roughing; main trap and fresh air inlet; floor, yard, cellar drains, rain leaders, etc.; fixture wastes; water closets; ventilation; improved plumbing connections; residence plumbing; plumbing for hotels, schools, factories, stables, etc.; modern country plumbing; filtration of sewage and water supply; hot and cold supply; range boilers; circulation; circulating pipes; range boiler problems; hot water for large buildings; water lift and its use; multiple connections for hot water boilers; heating of radiation by supply system; theory for the plumber; drawing for the plumber. Fully illustrated by 347 engravings. Price **$3.00**

RECIPE BOOK

HENLEY'S TWENTIETH CENTURY BOOK OF RECIPES, FORMULAS AND PROCESSES. Edited by GARDNER D. HISCOX.

The most valuable Techno-chemical Formula Book published, including over 10,000 selected scientific, chemical, technological, and practical recipes and processes.

This is the most complete Book of Formulas ever published, giving thousands of recipes for the manufacture of valuable articles for everyday use. Hints, Helps, Practical Ideas, and Secret Processes are revealed within its pages. It covers every branch of the useful arts and tells thousands of ways of making money, and is just the book everyone should have at his command.

Modern in its treatment of every subject that properly falls within its scope, the book may truthfully be said to present the very latest formulas to be found in the arts and industries, and to retain those processes which long experience has proven worthy of a *permanent* record. To present here even a limited number of the subjects which find *a place in this valuable* work would be difficult. Suffice to say that in its pages will

be found matter of intense interest and immeasurably practical value to the scientific amateur and to him who wishes to obtain a knowledge of the many processes used in the arts, trades and manufacture, a knowledge which will render his pursuits more instructive and remunerative. Serving as a reference book to the small and large manufacturer and supplying intelligent seekers with the information necessary to conduct a process, the work will be found of inestimable worth to the Metallurgist, the Photographer, the Perfumer, the Painter, the Manufacturer of Glues, Pastes, Cements, and Mucilages, the Compounder of Alloys, the Cook, the Physician, the Druggist, the Electrician, the Brewer, the Engineer, the Foundryman, the Machinist, the Potter, the Tanner, the Confectioner, the Chiropodist, the Manicure, the Manufacturer of Chemical Novelties and Toilet Preparations, the Dyer, the Electroplater, the Enameler, the Engraver, the Provisioner, the Glass Worker, the Goldbeater, the Watchmaker, the Jeweler, the Hat Maker, the Ink Manufacturer, the Optician, the Farmer, the Dairyman, the Paper Maker, the Wood and Metal Worker, the Chandler and Soap Maker, the Veterinary Surgeon, and the Technologist in general.

A mine of information, and up-to-date in every respect. A book which will prove of value to EVERYONE, as it covers every branch of the Useful Arts. Every home needs this book; every office, every factory, every store, every public and private enterprise—EVERYWHERE—should have a copy. 800 pages. Price . . . **$3.00**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"Your Twentieth Century Book of Recipes, Formulas, and Processes duly received. I am glad to have a copy of it, and if I could not replace it, money couldn't buy it. It is the best thing of the sort I ever saw." (Signed) M. E. TRUX, Sparta, Wis.

"There are few persons who would not be able to find in the book some single formula that would repay several times the cost of the book."—*Merchants' Record and Show Window.*

"I purchased your book 'Henley's Twentieth Century Book of Recipes, Formulas and Processes' about a year ago and it is worth its weight in *gold*."—WM. H. MURRAY, Bennington, Vt.

"THE BOOK WORTH THREE HUNDRED DOLLARS"

"On close examination of your 'Twentieth Century Receipt Book,' I find it to be a very valuable and useful book with the very best of practical information obtainable. The price of the book, $3.00, is very small in comparison to the benefits which one can obtain from it. I consider the book worth fully three hundred dollars to anyone."—DR. A. C. SPETTS, New York.

"ONE OF THE WORLD'S MOST USEFUL BOOKS"

"Some time ago, I got one of your 'Twentieth Century Books of Formulas' and have made my living from it ever since. I am alone since my husband's death with two small children to care for and am trying so hard to support them. I have customers who take from me Toilet Articles I put up, following directions given in the book, and I have found everyone of them to be fine."—MRS. J. H. MCMAKEN, West Toledo, Ohio.

RUBBER

...BBER HAND STAMPS AND THE MANIPULATION OF INDIA RUBBER.

By T. O'CONOR SLOANE.

This book gives full details on all points, treating in a concise and simple manner the elements of nearly everything it is necessary to understand for a commencement in any branch of the India Rubber Manufacture. The making of all kinds of Rubber Hand Stamps, Small Articles of India Rubber, U. S. Government Composition, Dating Hand Stamps, the Manipulation of Sheet Rubber, Toy Balloons, India Rubber Solutions, Cements, Blackings, Renovating Varnish, and Treatment for India Rubber Shoes, etc.; the Hektograph Stamp Inks, and Miscellaneous Notes, with a Short Account of the Discovery, Collection and Manufacture of India Rubber, are set forth in a manner designed to be readily understood, the explanations being plain and simple. Including a chapter on Rubber Tire Making and Vulcanizing; also a chapter on the uses of rubber in Surgery and Dentistry. Third revised and enlarged edition. 175 pages. Illustrated **$1.00**

SAWS

SAW FILINGS AND MANAGEMENT OF SAWS. By ROBERT GRIMSHAW.

A practical hand-book on filing, gumming, swaging, hammering, and the brazing of band saws, the speed, work, and power to run circular saws, etc. A handy book for those who have charge of saws, or for those mechanics who do their own filing, as it deals with the proper shape and pitches of saw teeth of all kinds and gives many useful hints and rules for gumming, setting, and filing, and is a practical aid to those who use saws for any purpose. Complete tables of proper shape, pitch, and saw teeth as well as sizes and number of teeth of various saws are included. Third edition, revised and enlarged. Illustrated. Price $1.00

STEAM ENGINEERING

AMERICAN STATIONARY ENGINEERING. By W. E. CRANE.

This book begins at the boiler room and takes in the whole power plant. A plain talk on every-day work about engines, boilers, and their accessories. It is not intended to be scientific or mathematical. All formulas are in simple form so that any one understanding plain arithmetic can readily understand any of them. The author has made this the most practical book in print; has given the results of his years of experience; and has included about all that has to do with an engine room or a power plant. You are not left to guess at a single point. You are shown clearly what to expect under the various conditions; how to secure the best results; ways of preventing "shut downs" and repairs; in short, all that goes to make up the requirements of a good engineer, capable of taking charge of a plant. It's plain enough for practical men and yet of value to those high in the profession.

A partial list of contents is: The boiler room, cleaning boilers, firing, feeding; pumps, inspection and repair; chimneys, sizes and cost; piping; mason work; foundations; testing cement; pile driving; engines, slow and high speed; valves; valve setting; Corliss engines, setting valves, single and double eccentric; air pumps and condensers; different types of condensers; water needed; lining up; pounds; pins not square in crosshead or crank; engineers' tools; pistons and piston rings; bearing metal; hardened copper; drip pipes from cylinder jackets; belts, how made, care of; oils; greases; testing lubricants; rules and tables, including steam tables; areas of segments; squares and square roots; cubes and cube root; areas and circumferences of circles. Notes on: Brick work; explosions; pumps; pump valves; heaters, economizers; safety valves; lap, lead, and clearance. Has a complete examination for a license, etc., etc. Second edition. 285 pages. Illustrated. Price $2.00

EMINENT ENGINEERS. By DWIGHT GODDARD.

Everyone who appreciates the effect of such great inventions as the Steam Engine, Steamboat, Locomotive, Sewing Machine, Steel Working, and other fundamental discoveries, is interested in knowing a little about the men who made them and their achievements.

Mr. Goddard has selected thirty-two of the world's engineers who have contributed most largely to the advancement of our civilization by mechanical means, giving only such facts as are of general interest and in a way which appeals to all, whether mechanics or not. 280 pages. 35 illustrations. Price $1.50

ENGINE RUNNER'S CATECHISM. By ROBERT GRIMSHAW.

A practical treatise for the stationary engineer, telling how to erect, adjust, and run the principal steam engines in use in the United States. Describing the principal features of various special and well-known makes of engines: Temper Cut-off, Shipping and Receiving Foundations, Erecting and Starting, Valve Setting, Care and Use, Emergencies, Erecting and Adjusting Special Engines.

The questions asked throughout the catechism are plain and to the point, and the answers are given in such simple language as to be readily understood by anyone. All the instructions given are complete and up-to-date; and they are written in a popular style, without any technicalities or mathematical formulæ. The work is of a handy size for the pocket, clearly and well printed, nicely bound, and profusely illustrated.

To young engineers this catechism will be of great value, especially to those who may be preparing to go forward to be examined for certificates of competency; and to engineers generally it will be of no little service, as they will find in this volume more *really practical* and useful information than is to be found anywhere else within a like *compass. 387 pages.* Seventh edition. Price $2.00

RSEPOWER CHART.

Shows the horsepower of any stationary engine without calculation. No matter what the cylinder diameter of stroke, the steam pressure of cut-off, the revolutions, or whether condensing or non-condensing, it's all there. Easy to use, accurate, and saves time and calculations. Especially useful to engineers and designers. **50 cents**

DDERN STEAM ENGINEERING IN THEORY AND PRACTICE. By GARDNER D. HISCOX.

This is a complete and practical work issued for Stationary Engineers and Firemen, dealing with the care and management of boilers, engines, pumps, superheated steam, refrigerating machinery, dynamos, motors, elevators, air compressors, and all other branches with which the modern engineer must be familiar. Nearly 200 questions with their answers on steam and electrical engineering, likely to be asked by the Examining Board, are included.

Among the chapters are: Historical: steam and its properties; appliances for the generation of steam; types of boilers; chimney and its work; heat economy of the feed water; steam pumps and their work: incrustation and its work; steam above atmospheric pressure; flow of steam from nozzles; superheated steam and its work; adiabatic expansion of steam; indicator and its work; steam engine proportions; slide valve engines and valve motion; Corliss engine and its valve gear; compound engine and its theory; triple and multiple expansion engine; steam turbine; refrigeration; elevators and their management; cost of power; steam engine troubles; electric power and electric plants. 487 pages. 405 engravings. 3d Edition. . . . **$3.00**

EAM ENGINE CATECHISM. By ROBERT GRIMSHAW.

This unique volume of 413 pages is not only a catechism on the question and answer principle, but it contains formulas and worked-out answers for all the Steam problems that appertain to the operation and management of the Steam Engine. Illustrations of various valves and valve gear with their principles of operation are given. Thirty-four Tables that are indispensable to every engineer and fireman that wishes to be progressive and is ambitious to become master of his calling are within its pages. It is a most valuable instructor in the service of Steam Engineering. Leading engineers have recommended it as a valuable educator for the beginner as well as a reference book for the engineer. It is thoroughly indexed for every detail. Every essential question on the Steam Engine with its answer is contained in this valuable work. Sixteenth edition. Price **$2.00**

EAM ENGINEER'S ARITHMETIC. By COLVIN-CHENEY.

A practical pocket-book for the steam engineer. Shows how to work the problems of the engine room and shows "why." Tells how to figure horsepower of engines and boilers; area of boilers; has tables of areas and circumferences; steam tables; has a dictionary of engineering terms. Puts you on to all of the little kinks in figuring whatever there is to figure around a power plant. Tells you about the heat unit; absolute zero; adiabatic expansion; duty of engines; factor of safety; and a thousand and one other things; and everything is plain and simple—not the hardest way to figure, but the easiest. Second Edition. . . . . **50 cents**

STEAM HEATING AND VENTILATION

ACTICAL STEAM, HOT-WATER HEATING AND VENTILATION. By A. G. KING.

This book is the standard and latest work published on the subject and has been prepared for the use of all engaged in the business of steam, hot-water heating, and ventilation. It is an original and exhaustive work. Tells how to get heating contracts, how to install heating and ventilating apparatus, the best business methods to be used, with "Tricks of the Trade" for shop use. Rules and data for estimating radiation and cost and such tables and information as make it an indispensable work for everyone interested in steam, hot-water heating, and ventilation. It describes all the principal systems of steam, hot-water, vacuum, vapor, and vacuum-vapor heating, together with the new accelerated systems of hot-water circulation, including chapters on up-to-date methods of ventilation and the fan or blower system of heating and ventilation. Containing chapters on: I. Introduction. II. Heat. III. Evolution of artificial heating apparatus. IV. Boiler surface and settings. V. The chimney flue. VI. Pipe and fittings. VII. Valves, various kinds. VIII. Forms of radiating surfaces. IX. Locating of radiating surfaces. X. Estimating radiation. XI. Steam-

heating apparatus. XII. Exhaust-steam heating. XIII. Hot-water heating. XIV. Pressure systems of hot-water work. XV. Hot-water appliances. XVI. Greenhouse heating. XVII. Vacuum vapor and vacuum exhaust heating. XVIII. Miscellaneous heating. XIX. Radiator and pipe connections. XX. Ventilation. XXI. Mechanical ventilation and hot-blast heating. XXII. Steam appliances. XXIII. District heating. XXIV. Pipe and boiler covering. XXV. Temperature regulation and heat control. XXVI. Business methods. XXVII. Miscellaneous. XXVIII. Rules, tables, and useful information. 367 pages. 300 detailed engravings. Second Edition—Revised. Price $3.00

500 PLAIN ANSWERS TO DIRECT QUESTIONS ON STEAM, HOT-WATER, VAPOR AND VACUUM HEATING PRACTICE. By ALFRED G. KING.

This work, just off the press, is arranged in question and answer form; it is intended as a guide and text-book for the younger, inexperienced fitter and as a reference book for all fitters. This book tells "how" and also tells "why." No work of its kind has ever been published. It answers all the questions regarding each method or system that would be asked by the steam fitter or heating contractor, and may be used as a text or reference book, and for examination questions by Trade Schools or Steam Fitters' Associations. Rules, data, tables and descriptive methods are given, together with much other detailed information of daily practical use to those engaged in or interested in the various methods of heating. Valuable to those preparing for examinations. Answers every question asked relating to modern Steam, Hot-Water, Vapor and Vacuum Heating. Among the contents are: The Theory and Laws of Heat. Methods of Heating. Chimneys and Flues. Boilers for Heating. Boiler Trimmings and Settings. Radiation. Steam Heating. Boiler, Radiator and Pipe Connections for Steam Heating. Hot Water Heating. The Two-Pipe Gravity System of Hot Water Heating. The Circuit System of Hot Water Heating. The Overhead System of Hot Water Heating. Boiler, Radiator and Pipe Connections for Gravity Systems of Hot Water Heating. Accelerated Hot Water Heating. Expansion Tank Connections. Domestic Hot Water Heating. Valves and Air Valves. Vacuum Vapor and Vacuo-Vapor Heating. Mechanical Systems of Vacuum Heating. Non-Mechanical Vacuum Systems. Vapor Systems. Atmospheric and Modulating Systems. Heating Greenhouses. Information, Rules and Tables. 200 pages. 127 illustrations. Octavo. Cloth. Price $1.50

STEEL

STEEL: ITS SELECTION, ANNEALING, HARDENING, AND TEMPERING. By E. R. MARKHAM.

This work was formerly known as "The American Steel Worker," but on the publication of the new, revised edition, the publishers deemed it advisable to change its title to a more suitable one. It is the standard work on Hardening, Tempering, and Annealing Steel of all kinds.

This book tells how to select, and how to work, temper, harden, and anneal steel for everything on earth. It doesn't tell how to temper one class of tools and then leave the treatment of another kind of tool to your imagination and judgment, but it gives careful instructions for every detail of every tool, whether it be a tap, a reamer or just a screw-driver. It tells about the tempering of small watch springs, the hardening of cutlery, and the annealing of dies. In fact, there isn't a thing that a steel worker would want to know that isn't included. It is the standard book on selecting, hardening, and tempering all grades of steel. Among the chapter headings might be mentioned the following subjects: Introduction; the workman; steel; methods of heating; heating tool steel; forging; annealing; hardening baths; baths for hardening; hardening steel; drawing the temper after hardening; examples of hardening; pack hardening; case hardening; spring tempering; making tools of machine steel; special steels; steel for various tools; causes of trouble; high speed steels, etc. 400 pages. Very fully illustrated. Fourth Edition. Price $2.50

HARDENING, TEMPERING, ANNEALING, AND FORGING OF STEEL. By J. V. WOODWORTH.

A new work treating in a clear, concise manner all modern processes for the heating, annealing, forging, welding, hardening, and tempering of steel, making it a book of great practical value to the metal-working mechanic in general, with special directions for the successful hardening and tempering of all steel tools used in the arts, including milling cutters, taps, thread dies, reamers, both solid and shell, hollow mills, punches

and dies, and all kinds of sheet metal working tools, shear blades, saws, fine cutlery, and metal cutting tools of all description, as well as for all implements of steel both large and small. In this work the simplest and most satisfactory hardening and tempering processes are given.

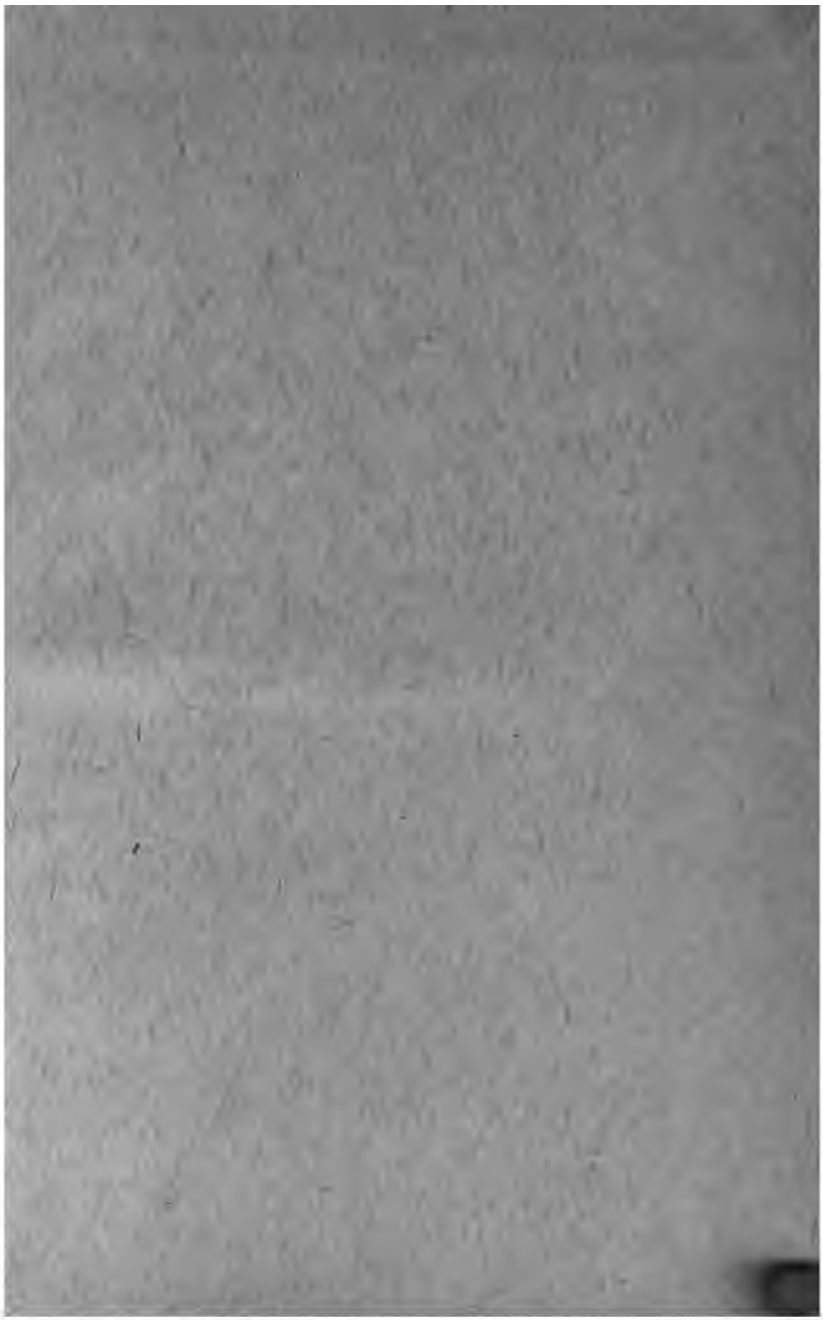
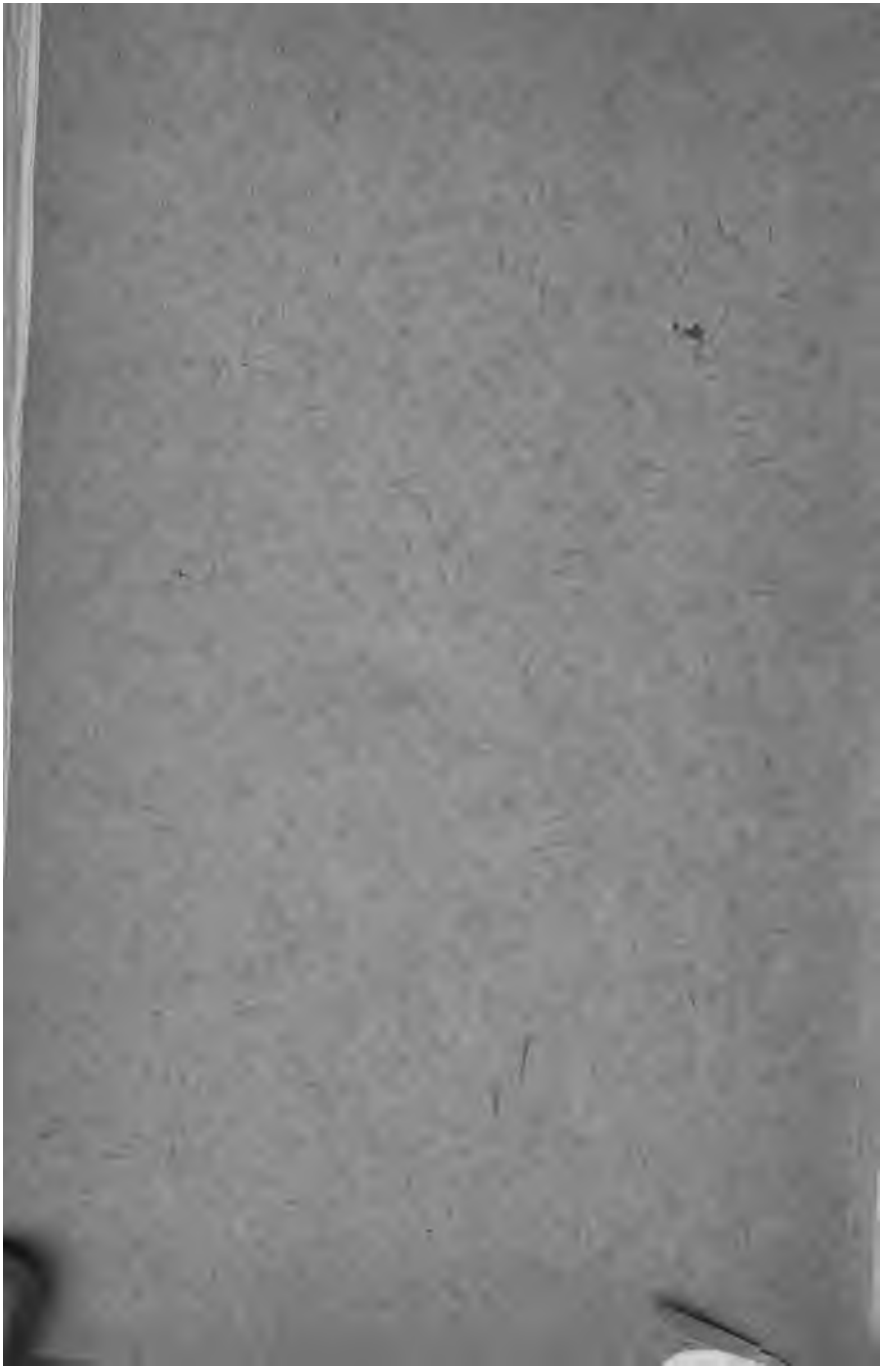
The uses to which the leading brands of steel may be adapted are concisely presented, and their treatment for working under different conditions explained, also the special methods for the hardening and tempering of special brands.

A chapter devoted to the different processes for case-hardening is also included, and special reference made to the adaptation of machinery steel for tools of various kinds. Fourth Edition. 288 pages. 201 illustrations. Price **$2.50**

TRACTORS

E MODERN GAS TRACTOR. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ.

A complete treatise describing all types and sizes of gasoline, kerosene, and oil tractors. Considers design and construction exhaustively, gives complete instructions for care, operation and repair, outlines all practical applications on the road and in the field. The best and latest work on farm tractors and tractor power plants. A work needed by farmers, students, blacksmiths, mechanics, salesmen, implement dealers, designers, and engineers. 500 pages. Nearly 300 illustrations and folding plates. Price **$2.00**

E HOME-MADE TRACTOR. By XENO W. PUTNAM.

A practical treatise on the construction of small and special purpose tractors in the home workshop from the odds and ends of cast-off machinery available on nearly every farm. This work shows the farmer how, at small expense, to make his gasoline engine conveniently portable by making it self-moving. It guides him in the construction of a practical farm tractor that is capable of hauling, harvesting, plowing and doing all the ordinary farm work in which the propulsion of other machinery is required. Twenty-four chapters are contained in this book and it is illustrated with over 153 working engravings showing many successfully built and tested home-made tractors. Bound in cloth, 12mo.